FORD **RANGER** Owner's Manual

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2022

All rights reserved.

Part Number: -202206-20220624182517

Table of Contents

Introduction
About This Publication 17
Using This Publication 17

Symbols Glossary
Symbols Used on Your Vehicle 18

Data Privacy
Data Privacy 21
Service Data 22
Event Data 22
Settings Data 23
Connected Vehicle Data 23
Mobile Device Data 23
Emergency Call System Data - Vehicles With: eCall 24

Visual Search
Steering Wheel 25
Instrument Panel - LHD 26
Instrument Panel - RHD 27
Vehicle Interior - LHD 28
Vehicle Interior - RHD 29
Front Exterior 30
Rear Exterior 31

Child Safety
Child Safety Precautions 32
Child Restraint Anchor Points 33
Child Restraints 34
Installing Child Restraints 36
Booster Seats 37
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Mechanical Child Proof Locks 38
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Remote Child Proof Locks 38

Seatbelts
Seatbelt Precautions 40
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts 40
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy 40
Seatbelt Reminder 41
Checking the Seatbelts 41

Airbags
How Do the Front Airbags Work 43
How Do the Side Airbags Work 43
How Do the Knee Airbags Work 44
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work 44
Airbag Precautions 45
Front Passenger Sensing System 45

eCall
What Is eCall 49
How Does eCall Work 49
Emergency Call Requirements 49
Emergency Call Limitations 49
Manually Making an Emergency Call 49
Emergency Call Indicators 50
Changing the Backup Battery 51
eCall – Troubleshooting 51

Keys and Remote Controls
Remote Control Limitations 52
Using the Remote Control 52
Opening and Closing the Flip Key 52
Removing the Key Blade 53
Sounding the Panic Alarm 53
Locating Your Vehicle 53
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start 54
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Flip Key 56
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control 57

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Table of Contents

Programming the Remote Control - Vehicles With: Push Button Start 57
Programming the Remote Control - Vehicles With: Flip Key 58
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting 59

MyKey™

What Is MyKey 60
MyKey Settings 60
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start 61
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Flip Key 61
Programming a MyKey 61
Clearing All MyKeys 62
Checking MyKey System Status 62
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems 62
MyKey – Troubleshooting 62

Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle 65
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle 65
Autounlock 66
Mislock 66
Autorelock 66
Door Lock Indicators 66
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings 66
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting 67

Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry 69
Keyless Entry Limitations 69
Keyless Entry Settings 69
Using Keyless Entry 69
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting 70

Tailgate

Tailgate Precautions 71
Opening the Tailgate 71
Locking and Unlocking the Tailgate 71
Tailgate Work Surface 71

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System 73
Anti-Theft Alarm System 73
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings 74
Security – Troubleshooting 75

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel 77
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start 77
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start 77
Horn 77
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off 78

Wipers and Washers

Wipers 79
Autowipers 79
Checking the Wiper Blades 80
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades 80
Washers 81
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting 82

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control 83
Headlamps 83
Headlamps – Troubleshooting 84
Autolamps 85
Exterior Lamps 85
Exterior Zone Lighting 87
Automatic High Beam Control 88

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting 90
Glare Free Lighting 91
Glare Free Lighting – Troubleshooting 93
Adaptive Front Lighting 93

Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off 94
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off 94
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off 94
Interior Lamp Function 94
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness 95
Ambient Lighting 95
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting 95

Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows 96
Global Opening and Closing 96
Window Bounce-Back 97
Locking the Rear Window Controls 97

Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions 98
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror 98
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror 98

Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors 99
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Folding Mirrors 99
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Folding Mirrors 100

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen 101
Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen 101
Tachometer 102
Speedometer 102
Fuel Gauge 103
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 103
Engine Oil Pressure Gauge - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen 103
Engine Oil Pressure Gauge - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen 103
Transmission Fluid Temperature Gauge - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen 103
Transmission Fluid Temperature Gauge - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen 104
AdBlue® Gauge - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen 104
AdBlue® Gauge - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen 104
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps 104
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps 104
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators 106
Instrument Cluster Indicators 106

Instrument Cluster Display

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen/12 Inch Screen 109
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen 109
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen 112
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen 114
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen 114

Personalized Settings

Changing the Language 115
Changing the Measurement Unit 115

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Changing the Temperature Unit 115
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit 115

Trip Computer

Accessing the Trip Computer 116
Resetting the Trip Computer 116
Resetting the Individual Trip Values 116
Configuring the Trip Computer 116

Remote Start

What Is Remote Start 117
Remote Start Precautions 117
Remote Start Limitations 117
Enabling Remote Start 117
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle 117
Extending the Remote Start Duration 118
Remote Start Settings 118

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

Identifying the Climate Control Unit 119
Switching Climate Control On and Off 119
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off 119
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off 119
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off 119
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off 119
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off 120
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off 120
Setting the Blower Motor Speed 120
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off 120
Setting the Temperature 120
Directing the Flow of Air 120
Auto Mode 121
Climate Control Hints 122

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

Identifying the Climate Control Unit 124
Switching Climate Control On and Off 124
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off 124
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off 124
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off 124
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off 124
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off 125
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off 125
Setting the Blower Motor Speed 125
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off 125
Setting the Temperature 125
Directing the Flow of Air 125
Climate Control Hints 126

Auxiliary Heater

What Is the Auxiliary Heater 128
Auxiliary Heater Precautions 128
Auxiliary Heater Limitations 128
Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off 128

Parking Heater

What Is the Parking Heater 129
Parking Heater Precautions 129
Parking Heater Limitations 129
Parking Heater Settings 129

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Switching the Parking Heater On and Off With the Remote Control 130
Parking Heater Remote Control Indicators 131
Changing the Parking Heater Remote Control Battery 131
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting 132

Interior Air Quality
What Is the Cabin Air Filter 133
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter 133

Front Seats
Front Seat Precautions 134
Sitting in the Correct Position 134
Manual Seats 135
Power Seats 137
Heated Seats 139
Ventilated Seats 140

Rear Seats
Manual Seats 141

Rear Occupant Alert System
What is the Rear Occupant Alert System 144
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work 144
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions 144
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations 144
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off 144
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators 145
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings 145

Memory Function
What Is the Memory Function 146
Memory Function Precautions 146
Locating the Memory Function Buttons 146
Saving a Preset Position 146
Recalling a Preset Position 146

USB Ports
Locating the USB Ports 147
Playing Media Using the USB Port 147
Charging a Device 147

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 120V Power Outlet/230V Power Outlet
What Is the Power Outlet 149
Power Outlet Precautions 149
Power Outlet Limitations 149
Locating the Power Outlets 149
Power Outlet Indicators 149

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet
What Is the Power Outlet 151
Power Outlet Precautions 151
Locating the Power Outlets 151

Wireless Accessory Charger
What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger 152
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions 152
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger 152
Charging a Wireless Device 152
Wireless Accessory Charger – Troubleshooting 153

Storage
Cup Holders 154
Glove Compartment 154
Center Console 155

Under Seat Storage 155
Glasses Holder 155

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions 157
Ignition Switch 157
Push Button Ignition Switch 158
Starting the Engine 158
Stopping the Engine 159
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry/Push Button Start 161
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position - Vehicles With: Push Button Start 161
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting 162

Auto-Start-Stop

What Is Auto-Start-Stop 166
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions - Manual Transmission 166
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions - Automatic Transmission 166
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off 166
Stopping the Engine - Manual Transmission 166
Stopping the Engine - Automatic Transmission 167
Restarting the Engine - Manual Transmission 167
Restarting the Engine - Automatic Transmission 167
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators 167
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting 168

Fuel and Refueling

Fuel and Refueling Precautions 170
Fuel Quality 171
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel 171
Running Out of Fuel 171
Refueling 173
Fuel Tank Capacity 176
Fuel Consumption Regulations 176
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting 177

Diesel Particulate Filter

What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter 178
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work 178
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions 178
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements 179
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration 179
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting 181

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System 183
How Does the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Work 183
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions 183
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements 183
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines 183
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank 184
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Status 186
Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption 187
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification 187
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting 187

Catalytic Converter

What Is the Catalytic Converter 189
Catalytic Converter Precautions 189
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting 189

Manual Transmission

Manual Transmission Precautions 190
Shifting Into Reverse 190
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators 190
Checking the Manual Transmission Fluid Level 191
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level 191
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification 191
Clutch Fluid Capacity and Specification 191

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission Precautions 192
Automatic Transmission Positions 192
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear 193
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators 193
Manually Shifting Gears 193
Temporary Neutral Mode - Vehicles With: Electronic Shift 194
Using Progressive Range Selection 195
Automatic Return to Park (P) - Vehicles With: Electronic Shift 195
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - Vehicles With: Electronic Shift 196
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - Vehicles With: Mechanical Shift 196

Four-Wheel Drive

How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work - 4x4 with Part Time Engagement 197
How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work - Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode 197
Four-Wheel Drive Limitations 197
Switching Four-Wheel Drive On and Off 199
Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode - 4x4 with Part Time Engagement 199
Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode - Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode 201
Four-Wheel Drive Modes 201
Four-Wheel Drive Indicators 202
Transfer Case Fluid Capacity and Specification 202
Four-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting 203

Electronic Locking Differential

What Is the Electronic Locking Differential 205
Switching the Electronic Locking Differential On and Off 205
Electronic Locking Differential Indicators 206
Electronic Locking Differential – Troubleshooting 207

Brakes

Brake Precautions 209
Anti-Lock Braking System 209
Brake Over Accelerator 209
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir 209
Checking the Brake Fluid 210
Brake Fluid Specification 210
Brakes – Troubleshooting 211

Parking Brake - Vehicles With: Conventional Mechanical Parking Brake

Applying the Parking Brake - Manual Transmission 213
Applying the Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission 213

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Releasing the Parking Brake 213
Parking Brake Audible Warning 213
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting 213

Electric Parking Brake - Vehicles With: Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake 215
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission 215
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission 215
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency 215
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake 216
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake 216
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning 216
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge 216
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting 217

Reverse Braking Assist

What Is Reverse Braking Assist 219
How Does Reverse Braking Assist Work 219
Reverse Braking Assist Precautions 219
Switching Reverse Braking Assist On and Off 220
Overriding Reverse Braking Assist 220
Reverse Braking Assist Indicators 220
Reverse Braking Assist – Troubleshooting 221

Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist 223
How Does Hill Start Assist Work 223
Hill Start Assist Precautions 223
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off 223
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting 223

Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work 224
Switching Auto Hold On and Off 224
Using Auto Hold 224
Auto Hold Indicators 224

Traction Control

What Is Traction Control 226
How Does Traction Control Work 226
Switching Traction Control On and Off 226
Traction Control Indicator 226
Traction Control – Troubleshooting 227

Stability Control

How Does Stability Control Work 228
Switching Stability Control On and Off 229
Stability Control Indicator 230
Stability Control – Troubleshooting 231

Hill Descent Control

What Is Hill Descent Control 232
How Does Hill Descent Control Work 232
Hill Descent Control Precautions 232
Switching Hill Descent Control On and Off 232
Setting the Hill Descent Speed 232
Hill Descent Control Indicator 233
Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting 233

Steering

Electric Power Steering 234
Steering – Troubleshooting 234

Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions 237
Switching Parking Aid On and Off 237
Rear Parking Aid 238
Front Parking Aid 238
Side Parking Aid 239
Parking Aid Indicators 241
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting 241

Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera 242
Rear View Camera Precautions 242
Locating the Rear View Camera 242
Rear View Camera Guide Lines 243
Rear View Camera Settings 243

360 Degree Camera

What Is the 360 Degree Camera 245
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work 245
360 Degree Camera Precautions 245
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras 245
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines 246
360 Degree Camera Settings 247

Active Park Assist

What Is Active Park Assist 248
How Does Active Park Assist Work - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist 248
How Does Active Park Assist Work - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist 248
Active Park Assist Precautions 248
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist 248
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist 249
Entering a Parallel Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist 249
Entering a Parallel Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist 249
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist 250
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist 251
Exiting a Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist 251
Exiting a Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist 251
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting 252

Cruise Control

What Is Cruise Control 254
Switching Cruise Control On and Off 254
Setting the Cruise Control Speed 254
Canceling the Set Speed 255
Resuming the Set Speed 255
Cruise Control Indicators 255

Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work 256
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work 256
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions 256
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations 257
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off 259
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation 259
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed 259

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap 260
Canceling the Set Speed 261
Resuming the Set Speed 261
Overriding the Set Speed 263
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators 263
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control 263
Lane Centering 263
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control 266
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting 268

Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control 270
How Does Drive Mode Control Work 270
Selecting a Drive Mode 270
Drive Modes 271

Speed Limiter

How Does the Speed Limiter Work 273
Speed Limiter Precautions 273
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off 273
Setting the Speed Limit 273
Changing the Set Speed Limit 273
Canceling the Set Speed Limit 273
Resuming the Set Speed Limit 273
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit 273
Speed Limiter Indicators 273
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings 274

Intelligent Speed Limiter

What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter 275
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work 275
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions 275
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off 275
Setting the Speed Limit 275
Changing the Set Speed Limit 275
Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance 276
Canceling the Set Speed Limit 276
Resuming the Set Speed Limit 276
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit 276
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators 276
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings 276
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter 276
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting 277

Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System 278
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work 278
Lane Keeping System Precautions 278
Lane Keeping System Limitations 278
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off 279
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode 279
Lane Keeping System Settings 279
Alert Mode 280
Aid Mode 280
Alert and Aid Mode 280
Lane Keeping System Indicators 281
Blind Spot Assist 282
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage 284
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting 286

Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System 289
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work 289
Blind Spot Information System Precautions 289
Blind Spot Information System Limitations 289
Blind Spot Information System Requirements 289
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off 290
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors 290
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage 291
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting 293

Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert 294
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work 294
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions 294
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations 294
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off 295
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors 295
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators 295
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting 296

Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist 297
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work 297
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions 297
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations 298
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off 299
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors 299
Distance Indication 300
Distance Alert 301
Automatic Emergency Braking 302
Evasive Steering Assist 302
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting 303

Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert 305
How Does Driver Alert Work 305
Driver Alert Precautions 305
Driver Alert Limitations 305
Switching Driver Alert On and Off 306
Driver Alert Indicators 306
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting 306

Traffic Sign Recognition

What Is Traffic Sign Recognition 307
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work 307
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions 307
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations 307
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators 308
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning 308
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance 308
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting 308

Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions 309
Load Retaining Fixtures and Capacities 309
Roof Rack 311

Pickup Bed

Pickup Bed Precautions 315

Pickup Bed Anchor Points 315
Pickup Bed Slots 317
Pickup Bed Access Caps 317
Roller Shutter 317

Connecting a Trailer
Connecting a Trailer Precautions 321
Tow Ball 321
Connecting a Trailer 322
Trailer Lighting Check 323
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting 324

Towing a Trailer
Towing a Trailer Precautions 325
Trailer Brake Precautions 325
Towing a Trailer Limitations 326
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft 326
Towing Weights and Dimensions 326
Towing a Trailer – Troubleshooting 327

Trailer Sway Control
How Does Trailer Sway Control Work 328
Trailer Sway Control Precautions 328
Switching Trailer Sway Control On and Off 328

Off-Road Driving
Off-Road Screen 329

Driving Hints
Off-Road Driving 331
Cold Weather Precautions 333
Driving Economically 333
Floor Mats 334

Crash and Breakdown Information
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off 335
Jump Starting the Vehicle 335
Post-Crash Alert System 337
Post Impact Braking 337
Automatic Crash Shutoff 337
Recovery Towing 338
Transporting the Vehicle 340

Towing Your Vehicle
Emergency Towing - Manual Transmission 342
Emergency Towing - Automatic Transmission 342

Emergency Equipment
Storing a First Aid Kit 343
Storing a Fire Extinguisher 343
Storing a Warning Triangle 343

Fuses
Fuse Precautions 344
Under Hood Fuse Box 344
Battery Fuse Box 354
Body Control Module Fuse Box 354
Identifying Fuse Types 358
Fuses – Troubleshooting 358

Vehicle Inspection Guide
Brake System Inspection 359

Maintenance
Maintenance Precautions 360
Opening and Closing the Hood 360
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Diesel 362
Under Hood Overview - 3.0L Diesel 363
Engine Oil 364
Engine Air Filter 366

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap 367
Coolant 368
Changing the Fuel Filter 372
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 2.0L Diesel 372
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 3.0L Diesel 373
12V Battery 373
12V Battery – Troubleshooting 376
Adjusting the Headlamps 377
Exterior Bulbs 378
Interior Bulbs 386

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior 387
Cleaning the Interior 389
Repairing Minor Paint Damage 391
Waxing Your Vehicle 391

Storing Your Vehicle

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage 392
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage 393

Wheel and Tire Information

Locating the Tire label 394
Using Summer Tires 394
Using Snow Chains 394

Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures 396
Inflating the Tires 396
Tire Pressure Specifications 396
Inspecting the Tire for Wear 398
Inspecting the Tire for Damage 398
Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems 400
Tire Rotation 400

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System 401
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions 401
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations 401
Viewing the Tire Pressures 401
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System 401
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting 402

Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire 404
Wheel Nuts 414

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 2.0L Diesel 415
Engine Specifications - 3.0L Diesel 416
Vehicle Dimensions - Chassis Cab 417
Vehicle Dimensions - Double Cab 418
Vehicle Dimensions - Single Cab 419
Vehicle Dimensions - SuperCab 421
Fuel Consumption Figures - 3.0L Diesel 422
Fuel Consumption Figures - 2.0L Diesel 423
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.0L Diesel 424
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 3.0L Diesel 424
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L Diesel 425
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 3.0L Diesel 426
Fuel Tank Capacity 426
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L Diesel 427
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 3.0L Diesel 427

Washer Fluid Specification 428
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification 428
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification 429
Clutch Fluid Capacity and Specification 429
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification 430
Brake Fluid Specification 431
Transfer Case Fluid Capacity and Specification 431
Front Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification 432
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification 432

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number 434
Vehicle Identification Plate 437

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle 438
Connected Vehicle Requirements 438
Connected Vehicle Limitations 438
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network 438
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network 438
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting 439

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot 441
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password 441
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting 442

Audio System

Audio System Precautions 443
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off 443
Selecting the Audio Source 443
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source 443
Adjusting the Volume 443
Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off 443
Switching Repeat Mode On and Off 443
Setting a Memory Preset 444
Adjusting the Sound Settings 444
Setting the Clock and Date 444
AM/FM Radio 445
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio 445
Traffic Announcements 446

Center Display Overview

Center Display Precautions 448
Center Display Limitations 448
Status Bar 448
Accessing Feature Drawers 449
Rebooting the Center Display 450

Voice Interaction

What is Voice Interaction 451
Setting the Wake Word 451
Beginning a Voice Interaction 451
Voice Interaction Examples 451

Phone

Phone Precautions 453
Connecting Your Phone 453
Phone Menu 453
Making and Receiving a Phone Call 454
Sending and Receiving a Text Message 455
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off 456

Bluetooth®

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device 457

Playing Media Using Bluetooth® 457

Apps

App Precautions 458
App Requirements 458
Accessing Apps 458
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device 459
Enabling Apps on an Android Device 459
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off 459
Switching Android Auto On and Off 459

Navigation

Connected Navigation 460
Accessing Navigation 460
Navigation Map Updates 460
Adjusting the Map 460
Live Traffic 460
Setting a Destination 460
Waypoints 461
Route Guidance 461
Trailer Towing Navigation 462

Vehicle Software Updates

Vehicle Software Updates 463
Software Update Settings 463
Software Update Indicators 464

Vehicle System Reset

Performing a System Reset 465

Accessories

Locating the Auxiliary Wiring 466

Auxiliary Switches

What Are the Auxiliary Switches 467
Locating the Auxiliary Switches 467
Locating the Auxiliary Switch Wiring 467
Identifying the Auxiliary Switch Wiring 468

Scheduled Maintenance

General Maintenance Information 470

Customer Information

Rollover Warning 472
Our Sustainability Report 472
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment 472
Declaration of Conformity 472
Radio Frequency Certification Labels 473
Replacement Parts Recommendation 511
Mobile Communications Equipment 512
eCall User Information 513
End User License Agreement 516
Converting or Modifying Your Vehicle 541

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility 542

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this publication. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

Note: *Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.*

Features and Options

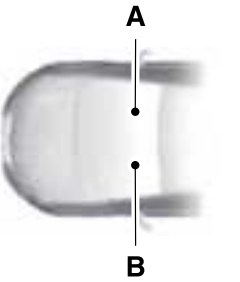
Note: *This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.*

Illustrations

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Location of Components

This publication could qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.
B Left-hand side.

USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR VEHICLE

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

Airbag

Air conditioning system

Air conditioning system lubricant type

Anti-lock braking system

Avoid smoking, flames or sparks

Battery

Battery acid

Blower motor

Brake fluid - non petroleum based

Brake system

Brake system

Cabin air filter

Check fuel cap

Child safety door lock or unlock

Child seat lower anchor

Child seat tether anchor

Cruise control

Do not open when hot

Electric Parking brake

Engine air filter

Engine coolant

Engine coolant temperature

Engine oil

Explosive gas

Fan warning

Fasten seatbelt

Flammable

Front fog lamps

Fuel pump reset

Fuse compartment

Hazard flashers

Headlamp high beams

Headlamps on

Heated rear window

Hill descent control

Horn control

Interior luggage compartment release

Jack

Keep out of reach of children

Lighting control

Low fuel level

Low tire pressure warning

Maintain correct fluid level

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

Note operating instructions

Panic alarm

Parking aid

Parking lamps

Passenger airbag activated

Passenger airbag deactivated

Power steering fluid

Power windows front/rear

Power window lockout

Requires registered technician

Safety alert

See Owner's Manual

See Service Manual

Side airbag

Shield the eyes

Stability control

Stability control off

Trail control

Turn Signal

Windshield defrosting system

Windshield wiping system

Windshield wash and wipe

WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA

The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: *The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings. See* ***Connected Vehicle*** *(page 438).*

Note: *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Requirements** (page 458).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 465).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA - VEHICLES WITH: ECALL

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system could transmit are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle fuel type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.
- Number of occupants in the vehicle.

Note: *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

STEERING WHEEL

A See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 254). See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 259).

B See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 109).

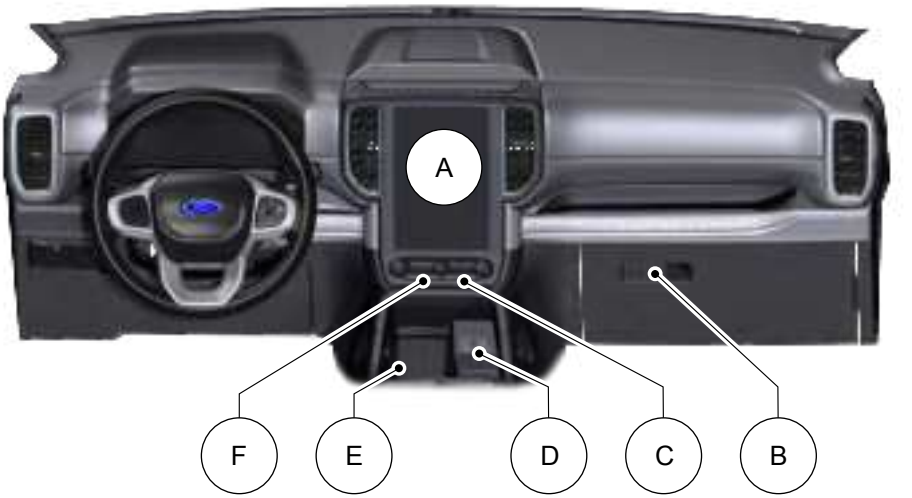
C See **Making and Receiving a Phone Call** (page 454).

D See **Beginning a Voice Interaction** (page 451).

E See **Adjusting the Volume** (page 443).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

INSTRUMENT PANEL - LHD



A See **Center Display Precautions** (page 448).

B See **Opening the Glove Compartment** (page 154).

C See **Identifying the Climate Control Unit** (page 119). See **Identifying the Climate Control Unit** (page 124).

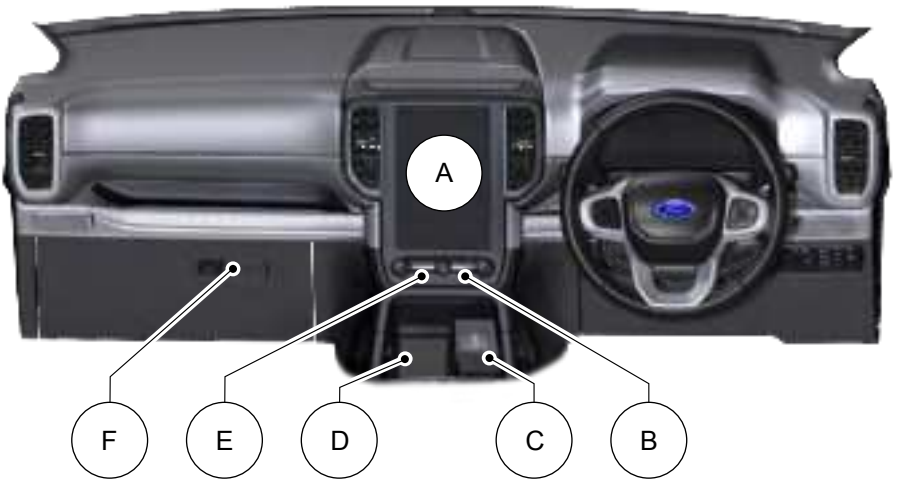
D See **Charging a Device** (page 147).

E See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 152).

F See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 335).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

INSTRUMENT PANEL - RHD



A See **Center Display Precautions** (page 448).

B See **Identifying the Climate Control Unit** (page 119). See **Identifying the Climate Control Unit** (page 124).

C See **Charging a Device** (page 147).

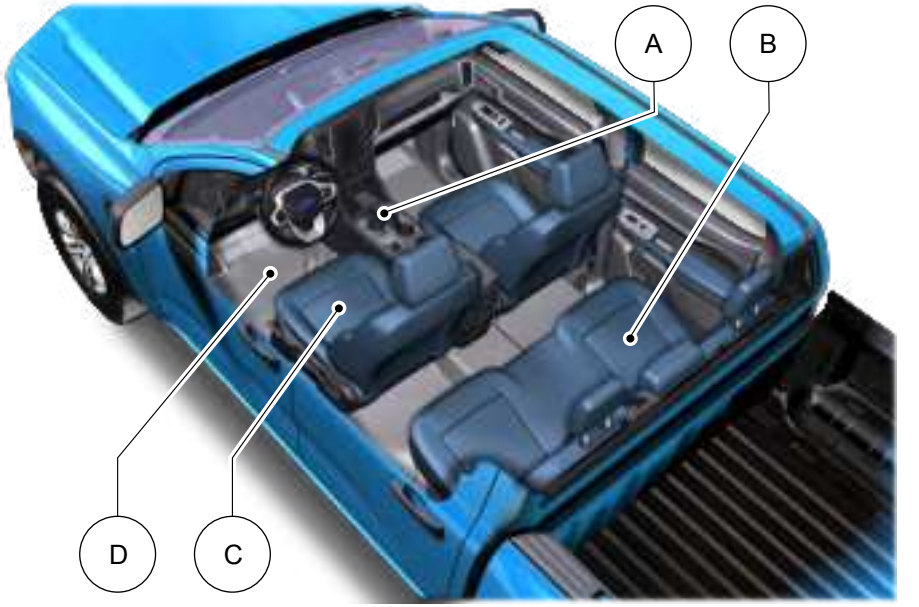
D See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 152).

E See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 335).

F See **Opening the Glove Compartment** (page 154).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

VEHICLE INTERIOR - LHD



A See **Automatic Transmission Position Indicators** (page 193). See **Manual Transmission Shift Indicators** (page 190).

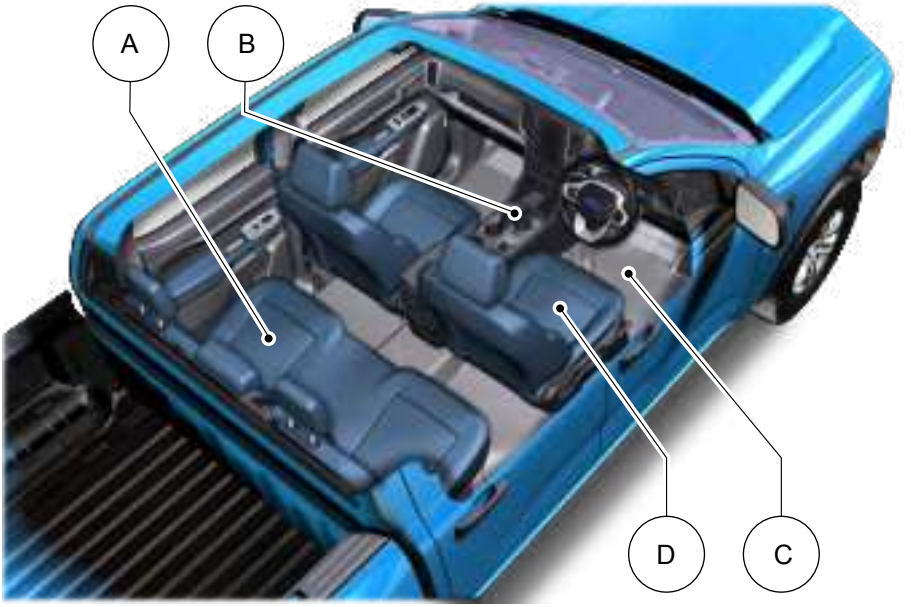
B See **Unfolding the Seat Backrest** (page 142).

C See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 134).

D See **Floor Mats** (page 334).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

VEHICLE INTERIOR - RHD



A See **Unfolding the Seat Backrest** (page 142).

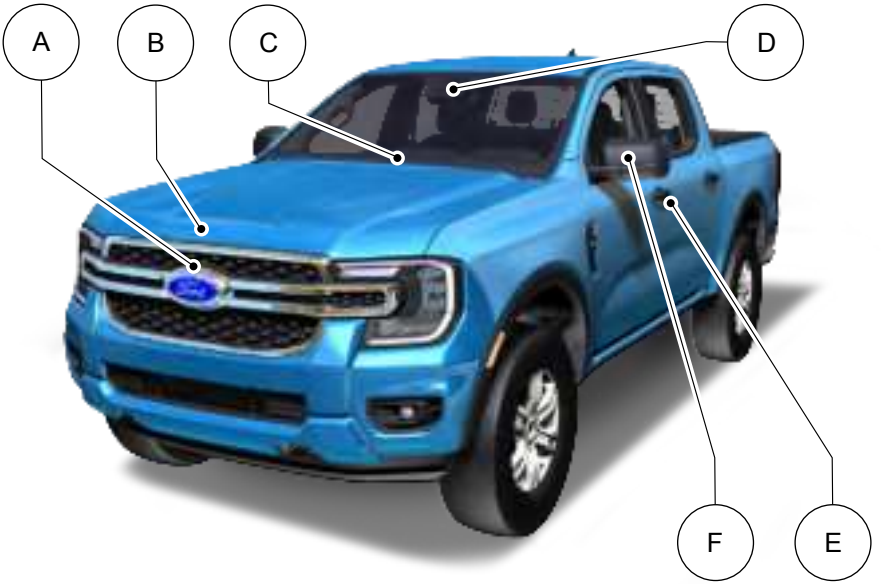
B See **Automatic Transmission Position Indicators** (page 193). See **Manual Transmission Shift Indicators** (page 190).

C See **Floor Mats** (page 334).

D See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 134).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

FRONT EXTERIOR



A See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 245).

B See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 360).

C See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 80).

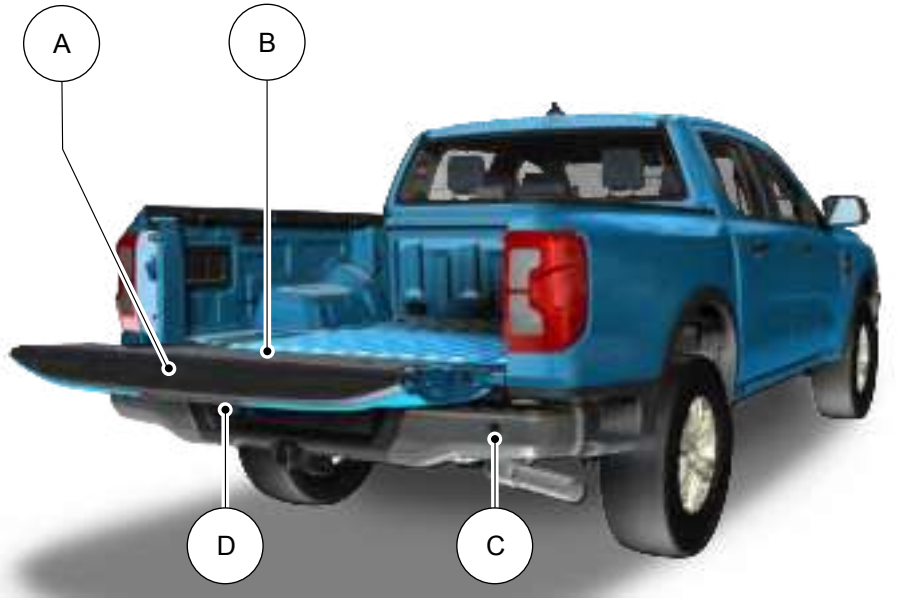
D See **What Is the Lane Keeping System** (page 278).

E See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 65). See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 65).

F See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 99).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

REAR EXTERIOR



A See **Opening the Tailgate From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 71).
B See **Tailgate Work Surface** (page 71).
C See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 238).
D See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 245).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.

WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WARNING: If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

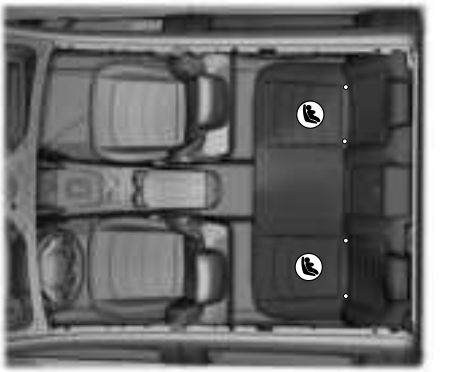
WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CHILD RESTRAINTS

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger seat with airbag **ON**.	X	X	UF[1]	UF[1]	UF[1]
Front passenger seat with airbag **OFF**.	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]
Rear seats.[2]	U	U	U	U	U

[1] We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

[2] Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					
Rear outermost seat ISOFIX.	Size class.	X	E[1]	C, D, E[1]	A, B, B1[1]	C, D[1]

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)
	Fixture.	X	R1[1]	R1, R2X, R2, R3[1]	F2, F2X, F3[1]	R2X, R2, R3[1]
	Size type.	X	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Rear center seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					

[1] The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

i-Size Child Restraints

	Front Passenger Seat	Rear Outermost Seats	Rear Center Seat
Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag **ON**.	X	-	-
i-Size child restraint systems.	X	i-U	X
Suitable booster fixture.	B2, B3[1]	B2, B3[1]	B2, B3[1]

[1] The fixture is defined for booster child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on i-Size boosters.

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Mass Group Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
0+ 0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	Britax Römer.	Baby Safe Plus with ISOFIX base.[1]	ISOFIX base or seatbelt only.
1 9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	Britax Römer.	Duo Plus.[1]	ISOFIX and top tether anchors or seatbelt only.
2 15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix.[1,2]	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.
3 22–36 kg (49–79 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix.[1,2]	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

[1]We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

[2]We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

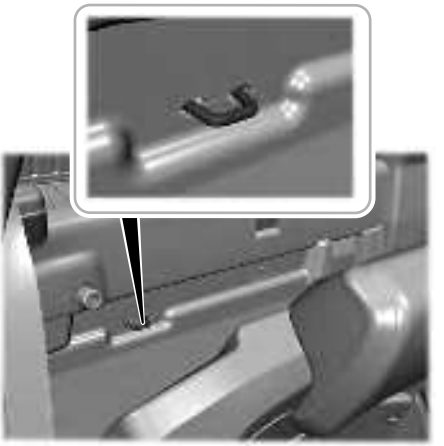
INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

USING TETHER STRAPS

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

WARNING: Always ensure that the locking mechanism of the rear seat back is fully engaged when in the upright position, by attempting to pull it down again.

WARNING: Make sure that the tether strap tightening mechanism remains accessible when the seatback is fully engaged in the catch.



There are two child restraint anchor fittings on the rear panel, one behind each outermost seating position. Do not fit a child restraint to the center rear seat.

E131744

To access the child restraint anchor fittings, pull the release strap up and move the seat backrest forward. When returning the seat backrest to the upright position, make sure that you securely latch it by moving it back and forth.

The following diagram shows the correct installation and orientation of the attaching clip and anchor.

BOOSTER SEATS

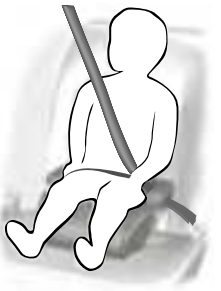
Booster Seat

Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion

WARNING: When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: MECHANICAL CHILD PROOF LOCKS

WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must switch the child safety lock separately on each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: REMOTE CHILD PROOF LOCKS

WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

E259984

The child safety lock control is on the driver door.

Press the lock control to switch them on. Press again to switch them off.

Note: *You cannot use the rear power window switches if you have put the child safety locks on.*

Note: *If the LED flashes, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.

A Seatbelt tongue.

B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: *It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.*

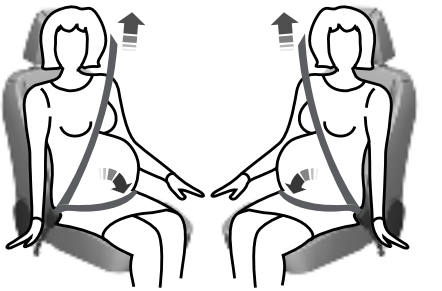
2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY

WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

SEATBELT REMINDER

SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on, a front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.

The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

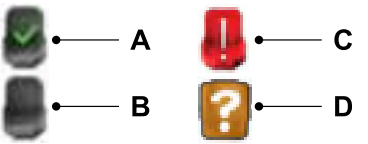
A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF

Contact an authorized dealer.

CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS



A Seatbelt fastened.

B Seatbelt not fastened.

C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.

D Fault.

Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Select screens***.
3. Select ***Seatbelts***.

CHECKING THE SEATBELTS

Check the seatbelts and child restraints periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary.

Check the following seatbelt assemblies after a crash.

- Retractors.
- Buckles.
- Shoulder belt guide on seat backrest.
- Child restraint anchors.
- Attaching hardware.

Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

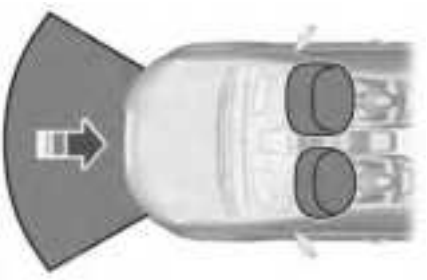
We recommend that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be checked and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Seatbelts – Information Messages

Message	Description
Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The front airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front seat backrests, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

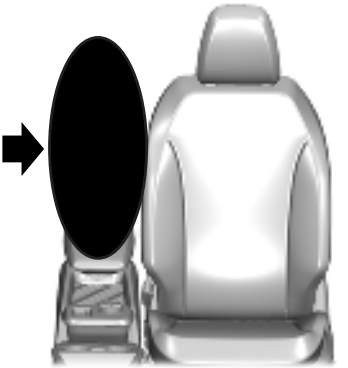
WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

The side airbags are inside the seat backrest of the front seats. There is a label attached to the side of the seat backrest to indicate the location of the airbags.

Center Mounted Side Airbag (If Equipped)

The center mounted side airbag is on the innermost side of the driver seat. There is a label attached to the side of the backrest to indicate the location of the airbag.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM



This airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. It could also deploy during a significant frontal crash or a vehicle rollover. The airbag reduces contact between the driver and front seat passenger in side impacts and rollovers. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, or a rear crash.

HOW DO THE KNEE AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.

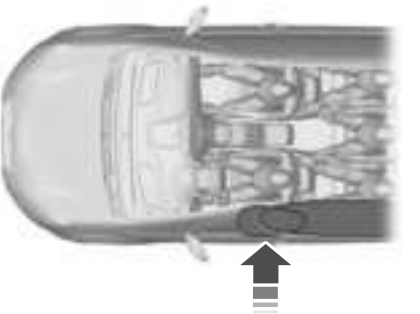
WARNING: Close the glove box door when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the passenger knee airbag and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

A driver knee airbag is located under or within the instrument panel. A passenger knee airbag is located within or under the glove box door. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver and passenger knee airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the driver and passenger knee airbag may deploy but the driver front airbag may not activate. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

Make sure the knee airbags are operating properly.

HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are above the front and rear side windows.

The airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover .

AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

This system detects a properly seated occupant and determines if the front passenger airbag should be enabled.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

HOW DOES THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM WORK

The system uses a passenger airbag status indicator which illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either enabled or disabled.

Note: *When you first switch the ignition on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.*

The indicator lamps are in the center of the instrument panel.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable the front passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag under these conditions:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A passenger takes their weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- If there is a problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

Even with this technology, parents are strongly encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables the front passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the off lamp.
- If you have installed the child restraint and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp, switch your vehicle off, remove the child restraint from your vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- After you have installed a rearward facing child restraint, make sure the passenger airbag indicator off illuminates. If the passenger airbag indicator on illuminates, remove the rearward-facing child restraint from the front passenger seat.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the passenger airbag status indicator off lamp is illuminated, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Switch your vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat backrest in an upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.

- Restart your vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag.
- If the indicator off lamp remains illuminated even after this, you should advise the person to ride in the rear seat.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, leaning against the seat backrest, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

If you think that the state of the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seat backrest.
- Objects stowed in the seat backrest map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The listed conditions could cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat could appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions listed.

Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly.

If the airbag readiness light is on, do the following:

- Pull your vehicle over.
- Switch your vehicle off.
- Check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction if found.
- Restart your vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster remains illuminated, there may be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle in for service immediately.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your Customer Relationship Center.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

WARNING: Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, the rear seats are the safest place for children.

WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

WARNING: Do not stow objects in the seatback map pocket or hang objects off a seatback if a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects under the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console. Check the passenger airbag indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system and increase the risk of serious injury.

WARNING: Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM INDICATORS

Occupant	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator	Passenger Airbag
Empty	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Child	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Adult	OFF: Not Illuminated	Enabled
	ON: Illuminated	

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS ECALL

eCall is an emergency call system that complies with European Union Regulation (EU) 2015/758. See **eCall User Information** (page 513).

The system uses the public cell phone network to initiate a call to the public emergency services when activated automatically in a severe accident or manually by the vehicle occupants.

eCall is designed for emergency calls in case of severe accidents or other emergencies that require the emergency services. It does not support other voice calls.

HOW DOES ECALL WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, the system initiates a call to the emergency services. This call cannot be canceled.

In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 24).

Note: *If the transmission is unsuccessful, this could result in the emergency operator not receiving your vehicle data.*

Note: *If the system is unable to initiate a call to the emergency services, a voice prompt plays and the emergency call indicator illuminates.*

EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS

The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.

EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

Using a non-Ford audio system could result in the system not properly operating.

MANUALLY MAKING AN EMERGENCY CALL

WARNING: Use caution when making a manual emergency call when driving.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the SOS symbol on the overhead console to open the emergency call button cover.
3. Press the emergency call button to initiate a call to the emergency services.

Note: *Press the button again before the call is connected to cancel it.*

4. Speak to the operator.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Note: *After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for approximately an hour.*

EMERGENCY CALL INDICATORS

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The indicator is integrated into the emergency call button cover on the overhead console.

It illuminates brightly for a short time when you switch the ignition on.

Emergency Call Indicator Status	Description
Indicator off.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Dimmed red.	Normal operation.
Rapidly flashing.	The system is initiating an emergency call.
Moderately flashing.	The system is transmitting vehicle data to the emergency services.
Slowly flashing.	The system is connected to the emergency services and communication is established.
Bright red.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CHANGING THE BACKUP BATTERY

The system has a backup battery and indicates when it needs to be changed. We recommend that you have the battery changed by an authorized dealer.

ECALL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ECALL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Emergency Call System malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Use your remote control to access various vehicle systems.

Note: *The buttons on your remote may vary depending on the vehicle region or options.*

Unlock

Press the button to unlock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 65).

Lock

Press the button to lock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 65).

Remote Start (If Equipped)

Press the button to remote start. See **Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle** (page 117).

Panic Alarm (If Equipped)

Press the button to sound the panic alarm. See **Sounding the Panic Alarm** (page 53).

OPENING AND CLOSING THE FLIP KEY

Opening Your Flip Key

Press the round button on the remote control to extend the flip key.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Note: *Inspect the key blade for debris. Periodically clean with a brush.*

Closing Your Flip Key

Press and hold the round button on the remote control to fold the key blade when not in use.

REMOVING THE KEY BLADE

Push the release button on your passive key and pull the key blade out.

SOUNDING THE PANIC ALARM

Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to turn it off.

Note: *The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.*

LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE

Press the lock button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash.

Note: *We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

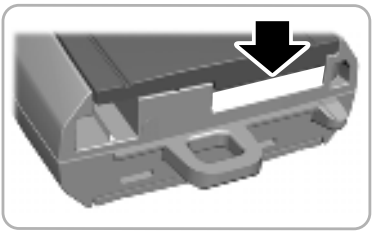
WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

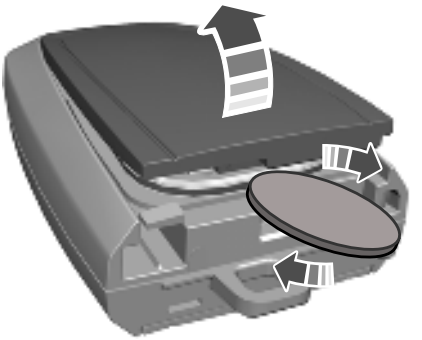
WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.

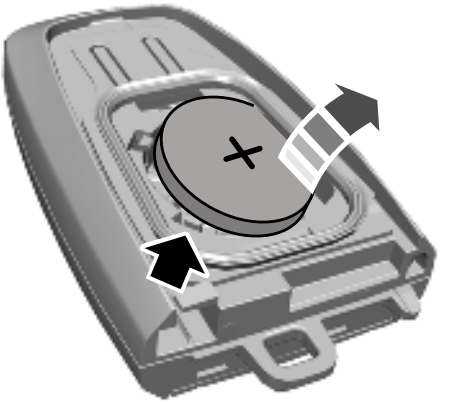
The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.





2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



3. Insert a screwdriver, and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter and install the key blade.

Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.*

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: FLIP KEY

WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.

The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

Press the button to release the key blade before beginning the procedure.

1. Insert a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.

3. Carefully remove the cover.

4. Insert a screwdriver as shown to release the battery.

Note: *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

5. Remove the battery.
6. Install a new battery with the + facing up.
7. Replace the battery cover.

Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.*

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.

Note: *Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.*

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

You must have two previously programmed remote controls inside your vehicle and the new, unprogrammed remote controls readily accessible. Contact an authorized dealer to have the spare remote control programmed if two previously programmed remote controls are not available. Make sure that your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.

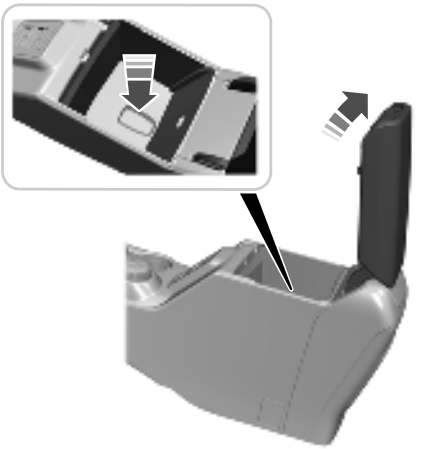
Make sure that you close all the doors before beginning and that they remain closed throughout the procedure. Perform all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you perform any steps out of sequence.

Note: *You can program a maximum of four remote controls to your vehicle.*

Note: *If your programmed remote controls get lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded remote, you need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. Store an extra programmed remote away from your vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconvenience. Contact an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement remote controls.*

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

Programming Backup Location



1. Place the first programmed remote in the backup slot inside the center console. With your foot off the brake pedal, press and release the push button ignition switch.
2. Wait five seconds and then press and release the push button ignition switch again.
3. Remove the remote control.
4. Within 10 seconds, place a second programmed remote control in the backup slot. Press and release the push button ignition switch.
5. Wait five seconds and then press and release the push button ignition switch again. Keep the ignition on for at least 3 seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Remove the remote control.
7. Place the unprogrammed remote control in the backup slot and press and release the push button ignition switch.

Programming is now complete. With your foot on the brake pedal, press the push button ignition switch to verify the remote control functions operate and your vehicle starts with the new remote control.

If programming was not successful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 7. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: FLIP KEY

General Information

You can program your own remote control to your vehicle. This procedure programs both the engine immobilizer keycode and the remote entry portion of the remote control to your vehicle.

Only use remote controls with an integrated mechanical key.

You must have two previously programmed coded remote controls and the new un–programmed remote readily accessible. Contact an authorized dealer to have the spare remote control programmed if the two previously programmed coded remote controls are not available.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

Steps for Programming Your Spare Remote Control

1. Insert the first previously programmed coded key into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
3. Switch the ignition off and remove the first coded key from the ignition.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

4. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off, insert the second previously coded key into the ignition.
5. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Switch the ignition off and remove the second previously programmed coded key from the ignition.
7. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off and removing the previously programmed coded key, insert the new un–programmed key into the ignition.
8. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least six seconds until you hear the door locks cycle.
9. Remove the newly programmed coded key from the ignition.

The key starts the engine if programming is successful. You can operate the keyless remote entry system with the new remote control with integrated key.

If programming was not successful, wait 20 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 8. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

Note: *You can program a maximum of six coded remote controls to your vehicle.*

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Key battery low Replace soon	Replace remote control battery.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS MYKEY

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits.

MYKEY SETTINGS

NON-CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS

Seatbelt Reminder or Belt-Minder™

MyKey mutes the audio system until the front seat passenger buckles the front seatbelt.

Note: *If your vehicle includes an AM/FM radio or a very basic audio system, then the radio may not mute.*

Satellite Radio (If Equipped)

Some satellite radio channels have restricted access to adult radio content.

Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

Driving and Parking Aids

You cannot configure settings for parking aids, blind spot information system, and cross traffic alert. These systems turn on when the vehicle turns on, and you cannot switch them off with a MyKey.

You cannot configure settings for pre-collision assist and lane keeping. These systems turn on when the vehicle turns on, but you can switch them off with a MyKey.

Note: *MyKey drivers may be able to switch the lane departure warning feature off, but this feature turns back on automatically with every new key cycle.*

CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61).

Speed Limit

WARNING: Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear on the touchscreen and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

Speed Minder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear on the touchscreen and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume reduces. A message appears on the touchscreen if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

Do Not Disturb

If you set do not disturb to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

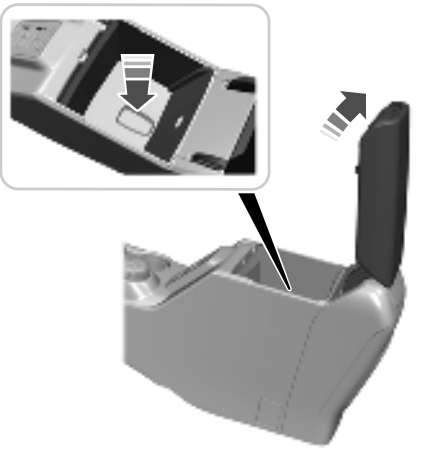
Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Note: *If a phone is connected using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto while driving with a MyKey, the driver can receive phone calls and text messages even if the do not disturb restriction is on. And if the vehicle comes with satellite radio, there is no restriction on the adult content.*

Traction and Stability Control

If you set traction control or stability control to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



1. Place the remote control in the backup slot.
2. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
3. Press ***Settings***.
4. Press ***Vehicle***.
5. Press ***MyKey***.
6. Press ***Create MyKey***.
7. Press ***Yes***.

Note: *After you confirm the creation of a MyKey, we recommend that you label this key.*

CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: FLIP KEY

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press ***Settings***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***MyKey***.
5. Press ***Create MyKey***.
6. Press ***Yes***.

Note: *After you confirm the creation of a MyKey, we recommend that you label this key.*

PROGRAMMING A MYKEY

You can program any remote control to become MyKey restricted but you must leave one unmodified as an admin key.

1. Switch the vehicle on using an admin key.
2. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
3. Press ***SETTINGS***.
4. Press ***Vehicle***.
5. Press ***MyKey***.
6. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.
7. Configure the setting.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

1. Switch the vehicle on using an admin key.
2. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
3. Press ***SETTINGS***.
4. Press ***Vehicle***.
5. Press ***MyKey***.
6. Press ***Clear all MyKeys***.
7. Press ***Yes***.

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about the distance traveled using a MyKey, and the number of admin keys and MyKeys created for your vehicle.

1. Switch the vehicle on.
2. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
3. Press ***SETTINGS***.
4. Press ***Vehicle***.
5. Press ***MyKey***.
6. Press ***MyKey Information***.

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with unapproved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for an approved remote start system.

MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

MYKEY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Message	Description
To create a MyKey, please place the key in the backup location.	Displays when trying to create a MyKey and the admin key is not placed in the backup position. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61).
The key is already a MyKey.	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
MyKey will be enabled at the next key cycle. Please label the current key as a MyKey.	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.

MYKEY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: REMOTE FLIP KEY/FLIP KEY

Message	Description
The key is already a MyKey.	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
MyKey will be enabled at the next key cycle. Please label the current key as a MyKey.	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

MYKEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

What is an admin key?

An admin key is a key that you have not created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61).

Why am I not able to create a MyKey?

You have not placed the admin key in the backup position. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61). The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There has to be at least one admin key. You did not switch the ignition off after creating the last MyKey.

Why am I not able to program a MyKey?

The admin key is not inside your vehicle. The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61).

Why am I not able to clear the MyKeys?

The admin key is not inside your vehicle. The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61).

Why is the MyKey distance not accumulating?

The key used to start the engine is an admin key. An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61). You have cleared the MyKeys. See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 62).

Why am I not able to start the engine with a MyKey?

An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle. The system recognizes only the admin key when both are present.

MYKEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: FLIP KEY

What is an admin key?

An admin key is a key that you have not created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61).

Why am I not able to create a MyKey?

The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There has to be at least one admin key.

Why am I not able to program a MyKey?

The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61).

Why am I not able to clear the MyKeys?

The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61).

Why is the MyKey distance not accumulating?

The key used to start the engine is an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61). You have cleared the MyKeys. See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 62).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors

Press the button to unlock all doors.

Locking the Doors

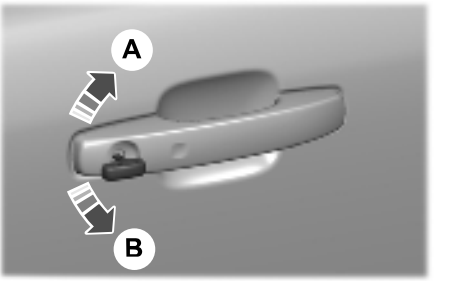
Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

You can also use the remote control to lock or unlock the tailgate if your vehicle comes with a power tailgate lock. See **Locking and Unlocking the Tailgate** (page 71).

Note: *For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See **Keyless Entry** (page 69).*

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

If there is a power door lock fault you can use the key blade to lock and unlock the doors.



A Lock.
B Unlock.

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the front doors.

Press the button to unlock all doors.

Press the button to lock all doors.

Note: *The central locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.*

OPENING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Pull the interior door handle to unlock and open a door.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

AUTOUNLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is an unlocking feature that unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop.

AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after all of the following occur.

1. All the doors are closed and your vehicle is moving at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to the accessory position.

Note: *If you open the driver door after 10 minutes, Autounlock does not unlock all other doors.*

SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Locks***.
5. Switch ***Auto Unlock*** on or off.

MISLOCK

WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked.

MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

The turn signals will not flash when you press the lock button once and the hood or any door is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Locks***.
5. Switch ***Mislock*** on or off.

AUTORELOCK

HOW DOES AUTORELOCK WORK

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state.

DOOR LOCK INDICATORS

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when you lock the door. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when a door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

Door Ajar Warning Lamp

Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Driver door open	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger door open	
Rear left door open	
Rear right door open	
Bonnet open	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

DOORS AND LOCKS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Can accessories such as steps or handles be used with the latch assembly?

Do not use the door latch assembly to attach any accessory, such as handles or steps, as this can cause damage to your vehicle.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 1 m (3 ft) from the front door handles and the tailgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Switch the ignition on using an original key that has not been created as a MyKey.
2. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
3. Press ***Vehicle settings***.
4. Press ***Locks***.
5. Switch ***Intelligent Access*** on or off.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can enable the one-stage unlocking function allowing you to unlock all doors when you touch the unlock sensor.

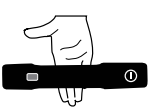
Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking.

This setting can also be modified in the vehicle Settings menu on the touchscreen, under Locks.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, you can unlock all of the other doors by pressing the unlock button on your remote or from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

USING KEYLESS ENTRY

Unlocking the Doors



With your passive key within 1 m (3 ft) of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle for a brief period and then pull on the door handle to unlock, being careful not to touch the lock sensor at the same time or pull on the door handle too quickly. The intelligent access system requires a brief delay to authenticate your passive key.

Locking the Doors

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

With your passive key within 1 m (3 ft) of your vehicle, touch the outer door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock, being careful not to touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking.

KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 69). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Why does the passive key not work?

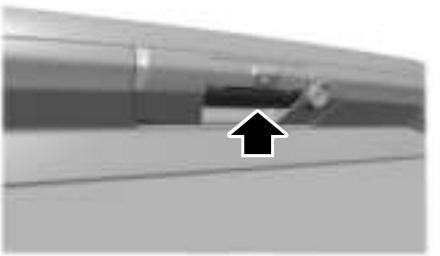
The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

TAILGATE PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

OPENING THE TAILGATE

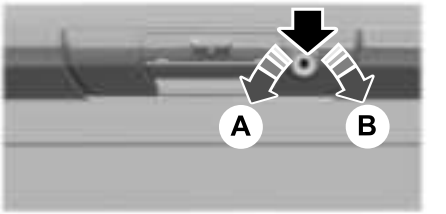
OPENING THE TAILGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Pull up on the handle to release the tailgate.

Note: *You may need to unlock the tailgate first.*

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING THE TAILGATE



A Unlock.

B Lock.

1. Insert the ignition key into the tailgate lock.
2. Turn it to the left to unlock the tailgate.
3. Turn it to the right to lock the tailgate.

Power Locking and Unlocking

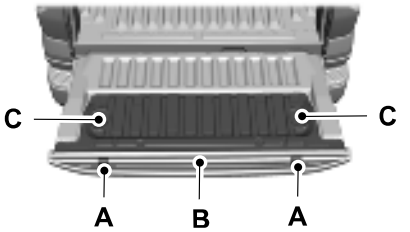
You can lock and unlock the tailgate with the remote control or power door lock control button.

TAILGATE WORK SURFACE

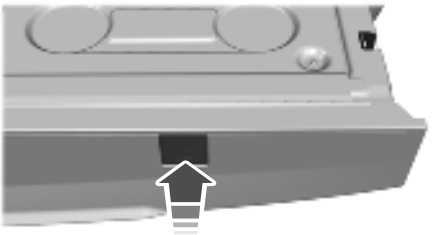
The tailgate work surface is a durable and functional surface on the inside portion of your tailgate you can use to perform various tasks.

To use the tailgate work surface, fold down the tailgate.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM



A Clamp pocket.
B Metric ruler.
C Cup holder.



The tailgate work surface contains clamp pockets that allow you to secure work material.

Note: *Damage could occur to the tailgate if the vertical clamp arm is overloaded in any direction.*

Note: *When you have finished using the tailgate work surface, make sure you remove all of your belongings, then close the tailgate.*

Note: *Metric ruler is subject to thermal variations with measurement errors of ±5 mm (0.2 in).*

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting the vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.*

HOW DOES THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM WORK

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch the ignition off.

It disarms when the ignition is switched on with a correctly coded key.

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM (If Equipped)

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery backup alarm.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above, sounds the alarm again.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the turn signals flash for five minutes.

WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS (If Equipped)

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS (If Equipped)

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM (If Equipped)

The battery backup alarm is an additional alarm sounder that has its own battery. It can detect if the vehicle battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system.

ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when your vehicle is switched off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, all sensors and perimeter sensing.

All Sensors

All sensors is the standard setting.

In all sensors, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle or if you are transporting the vehicle as this could trigger the alarm.*

Perimeter Sensing

In perimeter sensing, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

All the other equipped sensors activate when you arm the alarm in this mode.

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Alarm System***.
4. Press ***Motion Sensors***.
5. Press a setting.

WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch the ignition off.

Note: *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to all sensors.*

SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Alarm System***.
4. Switch ***Ask on Exit*** on or off.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
No key detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm announcement	

SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if there is any potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

What should I do if the vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

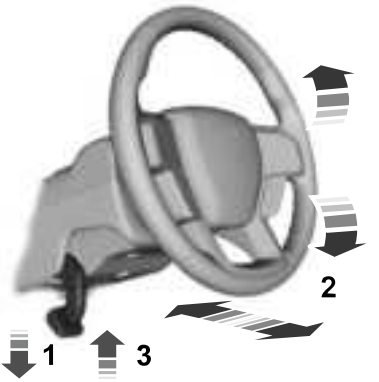
Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 134).*



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position you prefer.
3. Lock the steering column.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Remove the key from the ignition.
2. Slightly rotate the steering wheel to engage the lock.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Turn the key to position ***I***.

Note: *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: *The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.*

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

HORN

Press on the center of the steering wheel near the horn icon to activate the horn.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF

(IF EQUIPPED)

To switch the heated steering wheel on or off, press the button on the touchscreen near the climate controls.

Note: *A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WIPERS

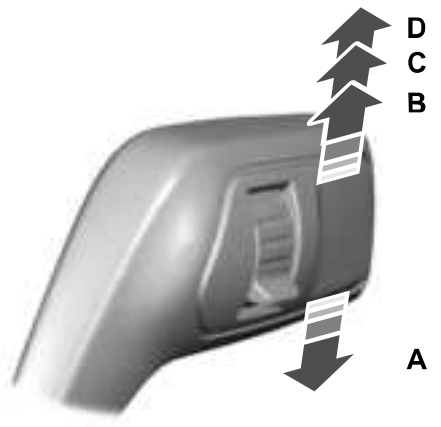
WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This could scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



A Single wipe.

B Intermittent wipe/Auto wipe.

C Normal wipe.

D High-speed wipe.

Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wipers.

AUTOWIPERS (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

Autowipers turns on and controls the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers.

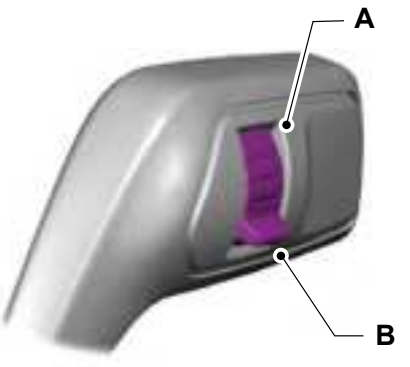
AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Wipers***.
5. Switch ***Rain sensing*** on or off.

Note: *When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. When you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature off, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



A High sensitivity.

B Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to set the rain sensor sensitivity.

When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield.

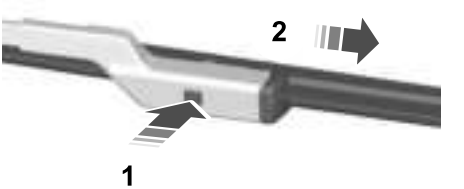
CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.

Note: *Do not manually move the wiper arms. To place the wiper arms in a service position, switch your vehicle on in accessory mode, switch on the wipers and switch your vehicle off when the wipers are at their highest position.*



1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking button.

Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.*

2. Remove the wiper blade.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

WASHERS

WASHER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 5ºC (41ºF), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer.

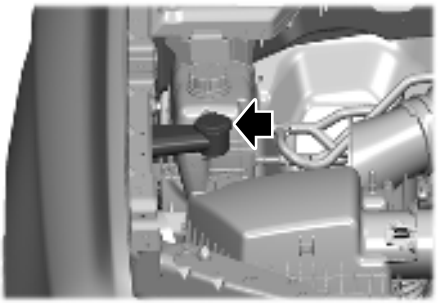
Note: *A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See* ***Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off*** *(page 81).*

SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Wipers***.
5. Switch ***Courtesy Wipe*** on or off.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

ADDING WASHER FLUID



WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 428).

WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS

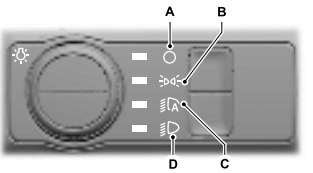
Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 80). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 80).

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



A Lamps off.
B Parking lamps on.
C Autolamps on.
D Headlamps on.

Rotate the control to make a selection.

Note: *The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.*

HEADLAMPS

USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you after switching your vehicle off.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

Note: *The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.*

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC HEADLAMP LEVELING

Your vehicle has a dynamic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL HEADLAMP LEVELING

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams:

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

1. Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.

Note: *Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.*

Note: *Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.*

HEADLAMP INDICATORS

Lamps On

Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

Headlamp High Beam

Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

How long may it take for the acceptable condensation to be cleared?

- Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

AUTOLAMPS

WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Lighting***.
5. Press ***Headlamp delay***.
6. Press a setting.

EXTERIOR LAMPS

USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS

Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

Note: *Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.*

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator

It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: *An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.*

SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF

WARNING: The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or your vehicle is in park (P).

USING THE FRONT FOG LAMPS (If Equipped)

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: *When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.*

2. Press the button on the lighting control to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

Note: *Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.*

Note: *The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.*

Front Fog Lamps Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS

The rear fog lamp button is on the lighting control.

Press the button to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the rear fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

SWITCHING THE CARGO LAMPS ON

The cargo lamps turn on when the vehicle is unlocked or when you open any door.

Note: *The cargo lamps turn off after a short period of time.*

Using the Cargo Lamp Switch (If Equipped)

Press the button on the lighting control to switch the lamps on and off.

Note: *If the cargo lamps turned on automatically, this button does not turn them off.*

Using the Roller Shutter (If Equipped)

The cargo lamps switch on when you open the roller shutter. See **Opening and Closing the Roller Shutter** (page 318).

SWITCHING WELCOME LIGHTING ON AND OFF

Welcome lighting slowly turns on the exterior lamps when you approach your vehicle with an authenticated device or unlock the doors.

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Lighting***.
5. Switch ***Welcome lighting*** on or off.

EXTERIOR LAMP INDICATORS

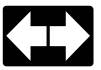
Front Fog Lamp Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: *An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.*

EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Exterior Lamps On

Sounds when you open the driver door and the lighting control is left in the parking lamps position and the ignition is off.

EXTERIOR ZONE LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

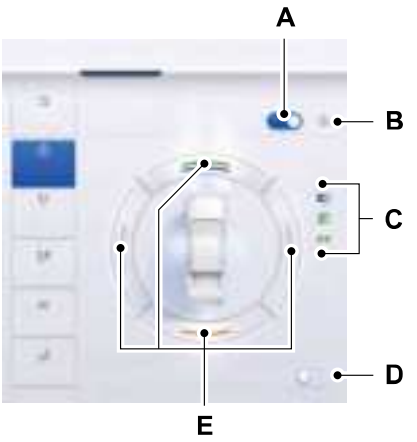
WHAT IS EXTERIOR ZONE LIGHTING

Exterior zone lighting divides the exterior lighting into zones and allows you to switch them on and off to provide lighting around the perimeter of your vehicle.

USING THE EXTERIOR ZONE LIGHTING

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***CONTROLS***.
3. Press ***Zone Lighting***.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM



A On and off button.
B Contextual help.
C Exterior lamp indicators.
D All zones on and off.
E Individual zones on and off.

You can only use zone lighting when the engine is off and the transmission is in park (P). The lighting turns off after a certain period of time to avoid excess battery drain.

Note: *For vehicles with a manual transmission, you must apply the electric park brake.*

Note: *You can also use individual zone controls to switch on each zone.*

Note: *Make sure to remove exterior lighting covers when using zone lighting.*

Note: *When your vehicle is off and the timer has one minute remaining, the direction indicators flash six times.*

Note: *Indicators on the touchscreen illuminate when the lights outside of the zone lighting control are on.*

Note: *You can remotely control the zone lighting using the FordPass app.*

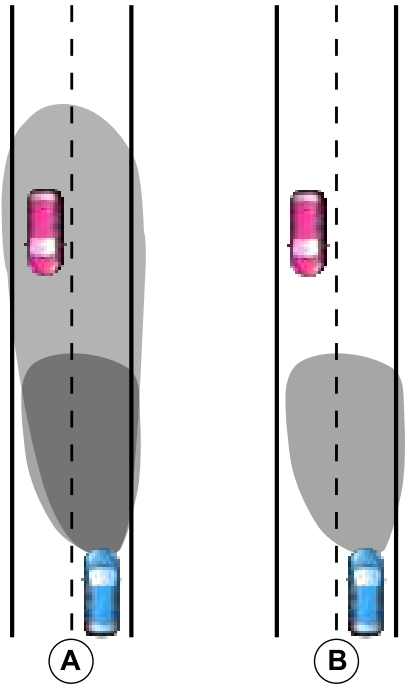
Note: *Vehicles without mirror puddle lamps only have two zones.*

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.



A Without automatic high beam control.

B With automatic high beam control.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.

WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: You may need to override the system during inclement weather.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow, or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Lighting***.
5. Switch ***Auto highbeam*** on or off.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS

Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.

Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch automatic high beam control back on.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

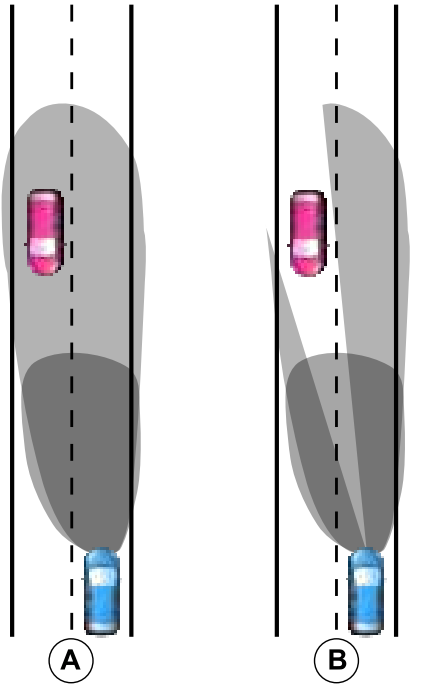
AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

HOW DOES GLARE FREE LIGHTING WORK

Glare free lighting enhances visibility and minimizes glare for other road users.



A Without glare free lighting.
B With glare free lighting.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not adapt the light.

WARNING: The system may not adapt the lighting to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles such as guard rails.

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: You may need to override the system during inclement weather.

WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

The system adapts the lighting to avoid glare if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING LIMITATIONS

The system turns off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed is lower on curves.*

SWITCHING GLARE FREE LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Lighting***.
5. Switch ***Glarefree Lighting*** on or off.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING INDICATORS

Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

OVERRIDING GLARE FREE LIGHTING

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.

Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch glare free lighting back on.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

GLARE FREE LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING (IF EQUIPPED)

GLARE FREE LIGHTING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING

SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Lighting***.
5. Press ***Adaptive headlamp setup***.
6. Press a setting.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On

Press the button on the overhead console toward the icon.

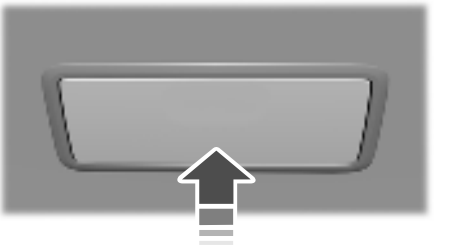
Switching All of the Interior Lamps Off

Press the button on the overhead console toward the icon.

SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

Press the edge of the lamp lens.

SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



Press the lens to switch the lamps on or off.

Note: *If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.*

INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF

The switch is on the overhead console.

Set the switch to the middle position.

When you switch the interior lamp function on, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open a door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.

Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.

AMBIENT LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Ambient Light***.
4. Switch ***Ambient Light*** on or off.

ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING

Drag the slider left or right.

INTERIOR LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTERIOR LIGHTING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why do my courtesy lamps or interior lamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

The battery saver turns the courtesy lamps and interior lamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS

WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: *The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.*

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

USING GLOBAL OPENING

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Within one second, press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows start to open.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

Note: *Global opening will only respond to a press and hold of the unlock button for a short period of time after the unlock button is pressed on the remote control.*

SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Settings***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Windows***.
5. Switch ***Global open*** on or off.

USING GLOBAL CLOSING

WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

Note: *Bounce-back is on during global closing.* *See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 97).*

SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Settings***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Windows***.
5. Switch ***Global close*** on or off.

WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift and hold the window control switch within two seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

Note: *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS

Press the window control switch to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

MANUALLY DIMMING THE INTERIOR MIRROR

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R), to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

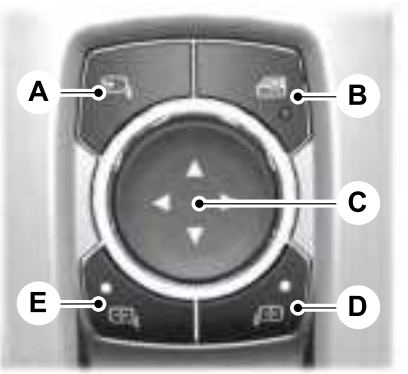
Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

Note: *A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



A Power fold.
B Window lock.
C Adjustment control.
D Right-hand mirror.
E Left-hand mirror.

To adjust the mirrors, switch your vehicle on and place the ignition in accessory or start.

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control light turns on.
2. Use the adjustment control to adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror control again. The control light turns off.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL FOLDING MIRRORS

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Directional Indicator Mirrors

When your vehicle is running, the forward-facing portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the turn signal.

Puddle Lamps (If Equipped)

The puddle lamps turn on when you approach your vehicle with a remote control or phone. If your vehicle has auto-folding mirrors, the puddle lamps are only on if the mirrors are folded and turn off when the mirrors unfold.

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off** (page 120).

360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 245).

Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

See **What Is Blind Spot Information System** (page 289).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: POWER FOLDING MIRRORS

Power-Folding Mirrors (If Equipped)

To fold both mirrors, switch your vehicle on, with the push button start in accessory mode or your vehicle running.

For tight parking conditions, press the control switch to fold the mirrors.

Press the control switch again to unfold the mirrors.

Note: *Do not stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control again.*

Note: *The left-hand and right-hand mirrors move at different rates. For example, one mirror may stop when the other one continues to move. This is normal. Moving the mirrors 10 or more times within one minute, or repeated folding and unfolding of the mirrors when holding the control down during full travel, may disable the system to protect the motors from overheating. Wait approximately three minutes with your vehicle running, and up to 10 minutes with your vehicle off, for the system to reset and operate as normal.*

Loose Mirror

If the power-folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not properly work even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if:

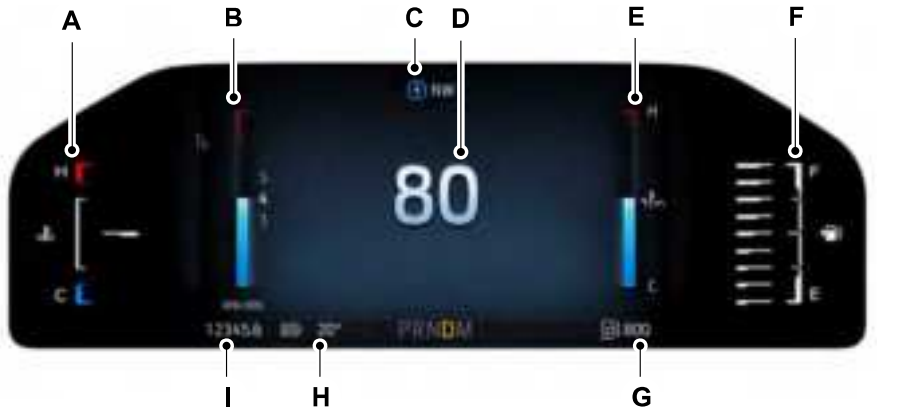
- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the power-fold feature, use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. A loud noise could occur when you reset the power-folding mirrors, this sound is normal. Repeat this process as needed each time the mirrors are manually folded.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN

Note: *Depending on the setting you select, your cluster could look different than what you see here.*

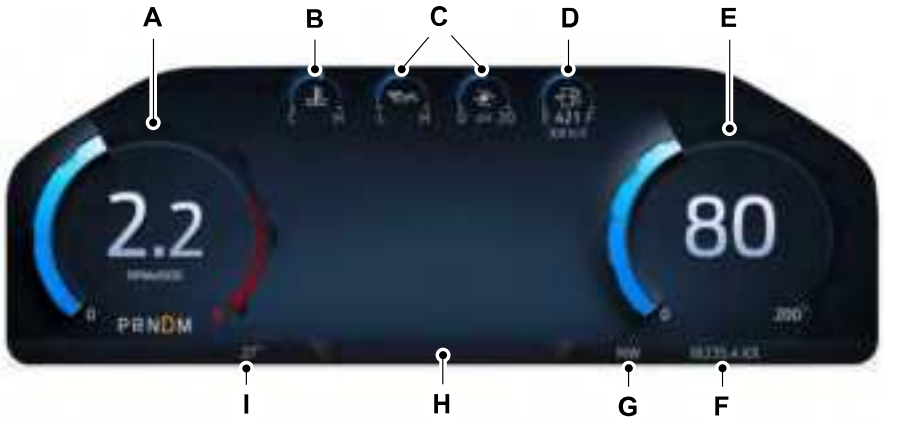


A	Engine coolant temperature gauge.
B	Tachometer.
C	Compass.
D	Speedometer.
E	Engine oil temperature.
F	Fuel gauge.
G	Distance to empty.
H	Outside air temperature.
I	Odometer.

Note: *The tachometer and engine oil temperature gauge can be configured on or off.*

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN

Note: *Depending on the setting you select, your cluster could look different than what you see here.*



A Tachometer.
B Engine coolant temperature gauge.
C Configurable gauges.
D Fuel gauge.
E Speedometer.
F Odometer.
G Compass.
H Information bar.
I Ambient temperature.

TACHOMETER

Indicates the engine speed.

The red line indicates the point at which engine revolutions could become limited to avoid over-revving the engine.

SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

Secondary Speedometer (If Equipped)

You can select a secondary speedometer that displays other measurement units.

Note: *When only the primary speedometer is shown, the units are the same as the trip distance units selected. See* ***Changing the Measurement Unit*** *(page 115).*

FUEL GAUGE

WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km (75 mi) to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (12 mi) and 0 km (0 mi) for all vehicle keys.

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 369).

ENGINE OIL PRESSURE GAUGE - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN

Indicates the engine oil pressure. The gauge turns red when the oil pressure warning lamp illuminates.

This gauge is available in an information on demand screen. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 109).

ENGINE OIL PRESSURE GAUGE - VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN

Indicates the engine oil pressure. The gauge turns red when the oil pressure warning lamp illuminates.

Note: *This is a configurable gauge.*

TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE GAUGE - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN

Indicates the transmission fluid temperature.

Note: *Special operating conditions such as snowplowing, towing or off-road use can cause higher than normal operating temperatures.*

This gauge is available in an information on demand screen. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 109).

TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE GAUGE - VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN

Indicates the transmission fluid temperature.

Note: *Special operating conditions such as snowplowing, towing or off-road use can cause higher than normal operating temperatures.*

Note: *This is a configurable gauge.*

ADBLUE® GAUGE - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN

Indicates the current AdBlue® level. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System** (page 183).

This gauge is available in an information on demand screen. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 109).

ADBLUE® GAUGE - VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN

Indicates the current AdBlue® level. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System** (page 183).

Note: *This is a configurable gauge.*

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all warning lamps shown are available.

Airbags

See **Airbags** (page 43).

Anti-Lock Brake System

If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Battery

Illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Brake System

Illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is released. If the parking brake is released, this indicates low brake fluid level or the brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Indicators may vary depending on region.*

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)

Illuminates when the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue®) is low, contaminated or the system requires service. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System** (page 183).

Door Ajar

Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door is open.

Electric Park Brake

Illuminates yellow or flashes when the electric parking brake requires service.

Note: *Indicators may vary depending on region.*

Engine Coolant Temperature

If it illuminates, safely stop your vehicle and switch the vehicle off.

Fasten Seatbelt

Illuminates and a tone sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

Hood Ajar

Illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

Icy Road Conditions

WARNING: Even if the temperature rises to above 4ºC (39ºF) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.

Illuminates when the outside air temperature is between 4ºC (39ºF) and 0ºC (32.0ºF). It illuminates red when the temperature is below 0ºC (32.0ºF).

Low Beam Warning

Illuminates when there is a malfunction with the LED low beam headlamp.

Low Fuel Level

Illuminates when the fuel level is low.

Low Tire Pressure

Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If illuminated, check your tire pressure as soon as possible. If it begins to flash at anytime, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Low Washer Fluid Level

Illuminates when the washer fluid is low.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

Illuminates when the ignition is on and the engine is off, this is normal. If it illuminates when the engine is on this indicates the emission control system requires service. If it flashes, have your vehicle checked immediately. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps** (page 162).

Oil Pressure

WARNING: If it illuminates when you are driving do not continue your journey, even if the oil level is correct. Have your vehicle checked.

Illuminates when the engine oil pressure is low.

Over Speed Warning

Illuminates if the vehicle speed exceeds the over speed threshold.

Over speed thresholds vary depending on region.

Powertrain Malfunction, Reduced Power, Electronic Throttle Control, Check 4X4

Illuminates when the powertrain or four-wheel drive require service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Transmission Temperature

Illuminates when the transmission temperature exceeds the normal operating range.

Water in Fuel (Diesel)

Illuminates when the fuel and water separator has a significant quantity of water in it and requires immediate draining. See **Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap** (page 367).

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all indicators shown are available.

Adaptive Cruise Control

See **Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 256).

Automatic High Beam

See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 88).

Automatic Regen Control Off

See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 178).

Auto Hold

Auto Hold Active

See **Auto Hold** (page 224).

Auto Hold Unavailable

See **Auto Hold** (page 224).

Auto-Start-Stop

Auto-Start-Stop Available

See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 166).

Auto-Start-Stop Unavailable

See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 166).

Blind Spot Monitor

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 289).

Cruise Control

See **Cruise Control** (page 254).

Differential Lock

See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 205).

Drive Modes

See **Drive Mode Control** (page 270).

Note: *Available drive modes could vary depending on your vehicle options and model.*

Eco mode.

Mud/Ruts mode.

Normal mode.

Rock crawl mode.

Sand mode.

Slippery mode.

Sport mode.

Tow/Haul mode.

Four-Wheel Drive

See **Four-Wheel Drive** (page 197).

Note: *Some indicators appear different depending on vehicle options.*

Engine Emission System Temperature

See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System** (page 183).

Fog Lamps

Front fog lamp. See **Using the Front Fog Lamps** (page 86).

Rear fog lamp. See **Using the Rear Fog Lamps** (page 86).

High Beam

See **Headlamps** (page 83).

Hill Descent

See **Hill Descent Control** (page 232).

Lamps On

See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 83).

Lane Centering

See **Lane Centering** (page 263).

Lane Keeping System

See **Lane Keeping System** (page 278).

Parking Heater

See **Parking Heater** (page 129).

Pre-Collision Assist

See **Pre-Collision Assist** (page 297).

Speed Limiter

See **Speed Limiter** (page 273).

Shift Indicator

It illuminates to advise you that shifting to a higher or lower gear may give better performance, fuel economy or lower emissions.

Stability Control and Traction Control

See **Traction Control** (page 226). See **Stability Control** (page 228).

Turn Signal Lamps

See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 85).

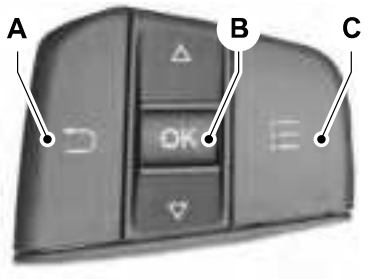
Wait to Start

See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page 158).

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN/12 INCH SCREEN

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



A Back button.
B OK button.
C Menu button.

Back Button

Press to go back or exit a menu.

OK Button

Press to make a selection.

Menu Button

Press to display the submenus.

Scroll Buttons

Press the toggle up or down button to scroll through menu items.

Status Indicator

Menu items with a checkbox indicate a feature's status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, an unchecked box indicates the feature is off.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU - VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: *For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.*

Menu Item	Submenu 1	Submenu 2
MyView	Configure MyView	See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 114).
Trip/Fuel	Trip Computer 1	
	Trip Computer 2	
	Auto StartStop	
	Seat belts	
	Driver Assistance	
Off-Road	Off-Road Status	
	Pitch & Roll	
	Power Distribution	
	Driver Assistance	
Towing	Trailer Information	
	Trailer Light Status	
	Towing Status	
	Driver Assistance	
Navigation	See **Navigation** (page 460).	
Phone	See **Phone** (page 453).	
Audio	See **Audio System** (page 443).	
Settings	Configure gauges	Show gauges
		Left selectable gauge
		Right selectable gauge
	Secondary Speedometer	
	Turn-By-Turn Indication	
	Border crossing	Reminder on
		Reminder off
Vehicle Maintenance	Tyre pressure	

Menu Item	Submenu 1	Submenu 2
	Tyre monitor	
	Engine Information	
	Oil Life	
	AdBlue® Info	
	AdBlue® Level	
	Engine Air Filter	
	Exhaust Filter	

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: *For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.*

Main Menu	Submenu 1	Submenu 2
MyView	Configure MyView	See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 114).
Trip/Fuel	Trip Computer 1	
	Trip Computer 2	
	Fuel Economy	
	Eco Coach	
	Auto StartStop	
	Seatbelts	
	Local Hazard Information	
Off-Road	Off-Road Status	
	Power Distribution	
	Vehicle Gauges	
	Engine Info	
Towing	Trailer Information	
	Trailer Light Status	
	Trailer Tyre Temperature	
	Towing Status	
Trip Computer	Trip Computer 1	Reset Individual Values
		Configure View
	Trip Computer 2	Reset Individual Values
		Configure View
Audio	See **Audio System** (page 443).	

Main Menu	Submenu 1	Submenu 2
Phone	See **Phone** (page 453).	
Navigation	See **Navigation** (page 460).	
Settings	Screen Content	Secondary Speedometer
		Left Gauge
		Right Gauge
		Border Crossing Reminder
		Turn-By-Turn Indication
	Classic View	Round Speedometer Gauge
		Digital Speedometer Only
Vehicle Maintenance	Oil Life	
	AdBlue® Gauge	
	AdBlue® Level	
	AdBlue® Info	
	Exhaust Filter	
	Engine Air Filter	
	Tyre Pressure	

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN

Adding Screens Using MyView

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***MyView***.
2. Select ***Configure MyView***.
3. Select an item from the list that you want to include in your MyView list.

Note: *A minimum of two items must be selected.*

Note: *You can select a maximum of seven items to include in MyView.*

4. Press the ***OK*** button.

Configuring Gauges

1. Select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Screen Content***.
3. Select ***Left Gauge*** or ***Right Gauge*** to switch the gauge on or off.

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN

Adding Screens Using MyView

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***MyView***.
2. Select ***Configure MyView***.
3. Select an item from the list that you want to include in your MyView list.

Note: *A minimum of two items must be selected.*

Note: *You can select a maximum of seven items to include in MyView.*

4. Press the ***OK*** button.

Configuring Gauges

1. Select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Configure gauges***.
3. Select to change the left-hand side and right-hand side gauges.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CHANGING THE LANGUAGE

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***General***.
4. Press ***Language***.
5. Select a language.

CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***General***.
4. Press ***Measurement Unit***.
5. Select a measurement unit.

CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***General***.
4. Press ***Temperature Unit***.
5. Select a temperature unit.

CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***General***.
4. Press ***Tyre Pressure Unit***.
5. Select a pressure unit.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate to the main menu.
2. Select ***Trip computer***.
3. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate to the main menu.
2. Select ***Trip computer***.
3. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.
4. Press and hold the ***OK*** button for a few seconds.

RESETTING THE INDIVIDUAL TRIP VALUES

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate to the main menu.
2. Select ***Trip Computer***.
3. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.
4. Select ***Reset individual values***.
5. Select the value to reset.
6. Press and hold the ***OK*** button for a few seconds.

CONFIGURING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate to the main menu.
2. Select ***Trip Computer***.
3. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.
4. Select ***Configure view***.
5. Select the value to display.
6. Press the ***OK*** button.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and to adjust the interior temperature according to the settings that you chose.

REMOTE START PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- The ignition is on.
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- Remote start is not enabled.

Note: *Do not use remote start if the fuel level is low.*

Note: *You can use remote start with FordPass. See* ***Connecting FordPass to the Modem*** *(page 438).*

ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Remote Start Setup***.
5. Switch ***Remote Start*** on or off.

Note: *To remote start with FordPass, make sure that the modem is enabled See* ***Enabling and Disabling the Modem*** *(page 438).*

REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass app to start the vehicle.

- The vehicle locks the doors.
- The turn signal lamps flash twice.
- The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.
- The horn sounds if the system fails to start.
- All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: *You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.*

The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Use the FordPass app to switch the vehicle off.

EXTENDING THE REMOTE START DURATION (IF EQUIPPED)

Use your FordPass App to extend the remote start duration.

If the duration is set to 15 minutes, the duration extends by another 15 minutes. This provides a total of 30 minutes.

Note: *Remote start can only be extended once.*

REMOTE START SETTINGS

Switching Climate Control Auto Mode On and Off

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Remote Start Setup***.
5. Press ***Auto*** or ***Last settings***.

Note: *If you switch the auto mode on, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22ºC (72ºF). When you switch the vehicle on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.*

Note: *If you switch the last settings on, the system remembers the last used settings.*

Heated Seat Settings (If Equipped)

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Remote Start Setup***.
5. Press ***Seats***.
6. Press ***Auto*** or ***Off***.

Note: *If you switch the heated seat settings on, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.*

Heated Steering Wheel Settings (If Equipped)

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Remote Start Setup***.
5. Press ***Seats and Steering Wheel***.
6. Press ***Auto*** or ***Off***.

Note: *If you switch the heated steering wheel settings on, the heated steering wheel turns on during cold weather.*

Remote Start Duration

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Remote Start Setup***.
5. Press ***Duration***.
6. Press the duration you prefer.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

IDENTIFYING THE CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT

Depending on your vehicle options, the controls could look different than what you see here.

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF

Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF

Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF

Press the button.

Note: *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

Note: *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF

Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, the temperature is set to the highest setting, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Note: *The heated rear window and heated mirrors also turn on when you select maximum defrost.*

Note: *When maximum defrost is on, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the A/C.*

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF

Press the button.

Note: *When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF (IF EQUIPPED)

Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.

Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: *The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF

Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: *Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED

Press **+** or **-** to select the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF (IF EQUIPPED)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.*

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Turn the control on the left-hand side of the climate control to set the left-hand temperature.

Note: *This control also sets the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.*

Turn the control on the right-hand side of the climate control to set the right-hand temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents

Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.

Press the button.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents

Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.

Press the button.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents

Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.

Press the button.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF

Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF

Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.

Press the button.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press ***AUTO*** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents.In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press ***AUTO*** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press ***MAX A/C***.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

IDENTIFYING THE CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT

Depending on your vehicle options, the controls could look different than what you see here.

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF

Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF

Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF

Press the button.

Note: *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

Note: *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF

Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, the temperature is set to the highest setting, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Note: *The heated rear window and heated mirrors also turn on when you select maximum defrost.*

Note: *When maximum defrost is on, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the A/C.*

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF

Press the button.

Note: *When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF (IF EQUIPPED)

Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.

Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: *The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF (IF EQUIPPED)

Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: *Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED

Turn the control to adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF (IF EQUIPPED)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.*

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Turn the temperature control counterclockwise for cooler temperature settings.

Turn the temperature control clockwise for warmer temperature settings.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents

Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Press the button.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents

Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.

Press the button.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents

Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.

Press the button.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest speed setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press ***MAX A/C***.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3. Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Direct air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

2. Press and release ***A/C***.
3. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer.
4. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct air toward the side windows.
6. Close the instrument panel air vents.

WHAT IS THE AUXILIARY HEATER

The auxiliary heater is designed to reduce the time needed to heat the engine when it is running. It turns on or off depending on the outside air temperature and the coolant temperature.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior. It uses fuel from the vehicle's fuel tank.

AUXILIARY HEATER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the auxiliary heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, behind the right front tire, is free from snow, ice, mud, and any other blockages to avoid issues with heater operation.*

Note: *If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.*

Note: *When the system is on, exhaust fumes come from under your vehicle. This is normal.*

AUXILIARY HEATER LIMITATIONS

The system does not operate in any of the following conditions:

- The battery charge level is low.
- The fuel level is low.
- The outside temperature is too high.

The system may not correctly operate when your vehicle is parked on a steep slope.

SWITCHING THE AUXILIARY HEATER ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Switch ***Aux Heater*** on or off.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS THE PARKING HEATER

The parking heater warms the engine and the vehicle interior when your vehicle is parked. It uses fuel from the vehicle's fuel tank.

PARKING HEATER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, behind the right front tire, is free from snow, ice, mud, and any other blockages to avoid issues with heater operation.*

Note: *If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.*

Note: *When the system is on, exhaust fumes come from under your vehicle. This is normal.*

PARKING HEATER LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when your vehicle is stationary with the engine off.

The system does not operate in any of the following conditions:

- The battery charge level is low.
- The fuel level is low.
- The outside temperature is too high.

The system may not correctly operate when your vehicles is parked on a steep slope.

PARKING HEATER SETTINGS

SWITCHING CONTINUE HEAT ON

When you switch the ignition off, the heater starts or continues running if conditions permit for up to 30 minutes.

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Park Heater***.
5. Switch ***Continue heat*** on or off.

Note: *You can use this mode to maintain a warm cabin after you switch the ignition off. After the heater completes this mode, the checkbox in the touchscreen resets to unchecked.*

SETTING THE PARKING HEATER TIMER

The system has three different modes that you can set.

Single Time

Allows you to set one heating cycle for a specific day. If conditions permit, the parking heater starts up to 40 minutes prior to the set date and time.

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.

3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Park Heater***.
5. Press ***Heater programming***.
6. Press ***Single time***.
7. Set the date and time you prefer.
8. Switch ***Activate*** on or off.

Note: *The date and time must be set before you can activate this mode.*

Note: *The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.*

Recurring Time One

Allows you to program a heating cycle for each day of the week. The time remains stored and the system warms up your vehicle prior to the programmed departure times.

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Park Heater***.
5. Press ***Heater programming***.
6. Press ***Recurring time one***.
7. Set the time and day of the week you prefer.
8. Switch ***Activate*** on or off.

Note: *The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.*

Recurring Time Two

Allows you to program a second heating cycle for each day of the week. The time remains stored and the system warms up your vehicle prior to the programmed departure times.

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Press ***Park Heater***.
5. Press ***Heater programming***.
6. Press ***Recurring time two***.
7. Set the time and day of the week you prefer.
8. Switch ***Activate*** on or off.

Note: *The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.*

SWITCHING THE PARKING HEATER ON AND OFF WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL

The parking heater transmitter allows you to remotely request the heater to start and run for up to 30 minutes or to stop all heater modes.

To start the heater, press and hold the **ON** or **HEAT** button on the transmitter until a green LED light illuminates on the transmitter.

To stop the heater, press and hold the **OFF** button on the transmitter until a red LED light illuminates on the transmitter. This applies only for the heater mode running at the present time, so future timer settings or future continue heat settings do not disable.

Note: *Up to three transmitters can be paired to your vehicle.*

Note: *Electronic devices that operate in the same frequency may affect the range of the transmitter.*

PARKING HEATER REMOTE CONTROL INDICATORS

Transmitter LED	Description
Green	The transmitter sent a radio signal.
Flashing green	The transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal.
Red	The transmitter sent a radio signal.
Flashing red	The transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal.

Note: *The LED light on the remote transmitter does not indicate the actual status of the heater. The light does not guarantee the heater received a signal to start or stop.*

CHANGING THE PARKING HEATER REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY

WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one three-volt lithium battery CR11108 or equivalent.

1. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver or coin, to unscrew and remove the battery cover.

2. Remove the battery.
3. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
4. Replace the battery cover.

PARKING HEATER – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING HEATER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park heater not started Low fuel level	Displays if the fuel level is too low.
Park heater not started Low battery state of charge	Displays if the battery is low or has no charge.
Park heater not started Outside temperature too high	Displays if the outside temperature is too high.
Park heater not started Vehicle not started over 7 days	If the vehicle has not been started in seven days or more before a programmed start, the timer is deleted and must be reset.

WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

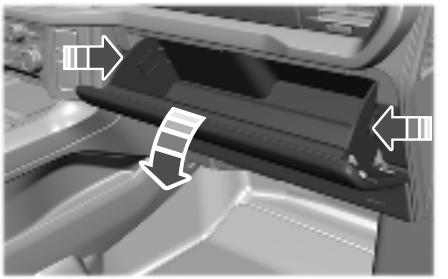
REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 470).

The cabin air filter is behind the glove compartment.

To remove the lower glove compartment and access the filter:

1. Open the glove compartment.



2. Press the tab on each side.
3. Fully lower the glove compartment.
4. Pull the glove compartment toward you.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

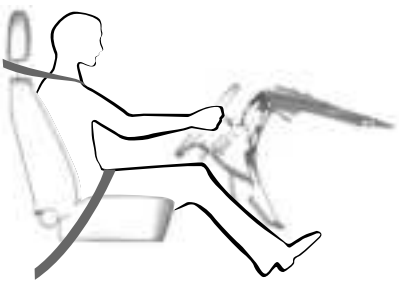
WARNING: All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always keep their whole body inside the vehicle when it is moving.

WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

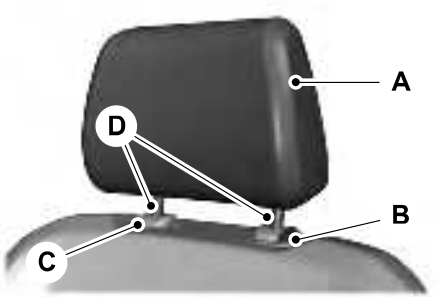
Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

MANUAL SEATS

HEAD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

A	An energy absorbing head restraint.
B	Guide sleeve lock and release button.
C	Guide sleeve.
D	Two steel stems.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

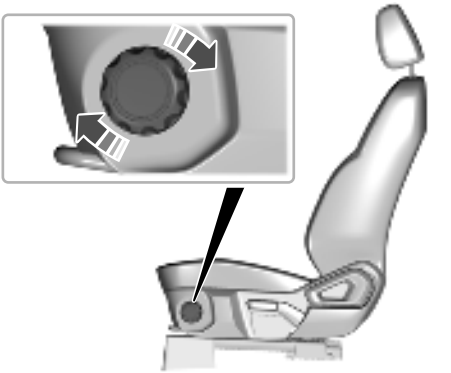
Bench Seat (If Equipped)

ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

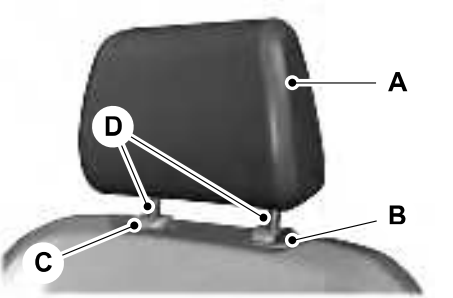
ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT (If Equipped)

ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



POWER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

HEAD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

A	An energy absorbing head restraint.
B	Guide sleeve lock and release button.

C Guide sleeve.
D Two steel stems.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

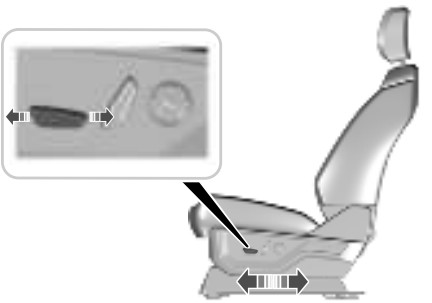
REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

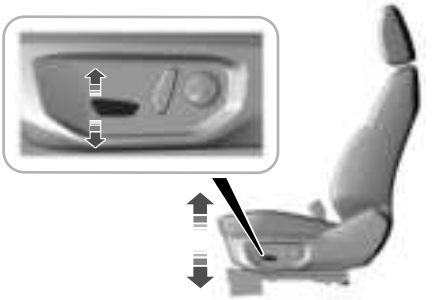
Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION

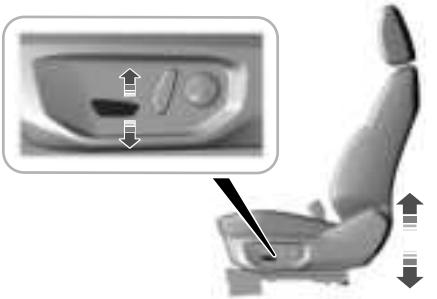
(If Equipped)



ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT

HEATED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

Note: *The heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle, based on your remote start settings. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

VENTILATED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

VENTILATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

Do not:

- Spill liquid on the front seats. This may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not work properly.
- Place cargo or objects under the seats. They may block the air intake causing the air vents to not work properly.

SWITCHING THE VENTILATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.

Press this symbol on the climate controls or the touchscreen to cycle through the various ventilation settings and off. More indicator lights indicate higher fan speeds.

Note: *When you switch the climate control fan speed and the ventilated seats to their maximum settings, the ventilated seats provide increased cooling.*

If the engine falls below 350 RPM while the ventilated seats are on, the feature turns itself off unless the vehicle is in Auto-Start-Stop mode. You may need to reactivate the ventilated seats.

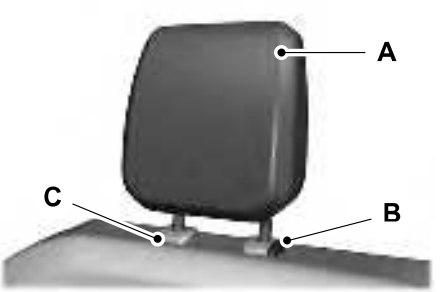
Note: *The ventilated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle, based on your remote start settings. The ventilated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

MANUAL SEATS

HEAD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS

Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraints



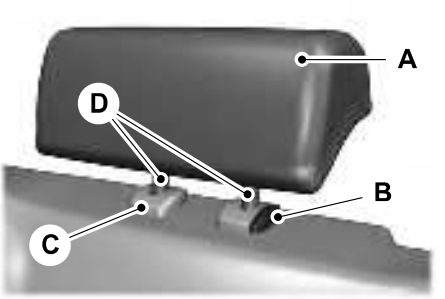
The head restraints consist of:

A An energy absorbing head restraint.

B Guide sleeve.

C Locking guide sleeve.

Rear Seat Center Head Restraint



The head restraint consists of:

A An energy absorbing head restraint.

B Two steel stems.

C Guide sleeve adjust and release button.

D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button (If equipped).

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

The outermost head restraints are non-adjustable.

Pull the center head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the center head restraint:

1. Press and hold the unlock and remove button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Fold the seat backrest forward before removing the head restraint.
2. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
3. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button.
4. Pull up the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Fold the seat backrest forward before installing the head restraint.
2. Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle with a seat that is unlatched or in the folded position. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not fold a seat if it is occupied. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

Pull the strap to fold the backrest forward.

Note: *Move the front seats forward to avoid interference between the front and rear seats. This provides more access to the back.*

UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: When unfolding the seat, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.

WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Pull the seat backrest up until it latches in the upright position.

Note: *We recommend that you push the seat backrest upright from the passenger side of the vehicle.*

FOLDING THE SEATS

Pull the strap to fold the seat up.

Hook the strap to the center head restraint.

UNFOLDING THE SEATS

WARNING: Make sure that cargo and other objects are not trapped under the seat cushion and that you return the seat cushion to the full-down position. Failure to do so may prevent the seat from operating properly, which could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash.

WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Unhook the strap from the head restraint, then pull the strap to lower the seat.

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors when rear doors have been opened and closed to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the information and entertainment display screen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors when rear doors are opened and closed.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Note: *It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.*

Note: *The audible warning does not sound when the front door is opened before you switch the ignition off.*

SWITCHING REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Vehicle***.
4. Switch ***Rear Occupant Alert*** on or off.

Note: *The default setting is on.*

Note: *Performing a master reset causes the system to switch on again.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Semiannual Reminder (If Equipped)

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS

Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press ***Close*** to acknowledge and remove the message.

Note: *Depending on your SYNC version, the graphic may look different from what you see here.*

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The warning sounds for a short period of time.

WHAT IS THE MEMORY FUNCTION

The memory function recalls the driver seat position.

MEMORY FUNCTION PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.

WARNING: Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

LOCATING THE MEMORY FUNCTION BUTTONS

The memory function buttons are on the driver door.

SAVING A PRESET POSITION

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the memory features to your preferred position.
3. Press and hold the preferred preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to three preset memory positions at any time.

RECALLING A PRESET POSITION

Press and release a preset button.

Note: *You can recall a preset memory position when the ignition is off, or when you place the transmission in park (P) or neutral (N) if the ignition is on and the vehicle is not moving.*

Note: *Pressing any of the preset buttons or any memory feature control during a memory recall cancels the operation.*

LOCATING THE USB PORTS

Data Transfer USB Ports

The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

Note: *These USB ports can also charge devices.*

Note: *Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.*

Note: *We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.*

Charge Only USB Ports

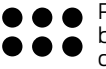
The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.
- In the frunk.

PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device to the USB port.



Press the button on the status bar to open the application drawer.

Press the USB option.

Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.

Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

Data Transfer USB Ports

You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

Charge Only USB Ports

You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet is a socket that connects an electrical device to your vehicle's power supply.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not use an extension cord or connect multiple devices to the power outlet. Doing so could result in overloading the power outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or property damage.

POWER OUTLET LIMITATIONS

You should not use the power outlet for these types of electric devices:

- Cathode ray tube type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws or other electric power tools and compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps.

Note: *Some devices may exceed the power rating on the device label when they are initially plugged-in and may require you to press the device power button more than one time in order to allow a soft start. After multiple attempts, if the device remains off, please consider that your device may require more than the available power.*

Note: *The power outlet provides full available power when the vehicle is in park (P). Power availability may be reduced when the vehicle is in drive (D). If more than one outlet is available in the vehicle, power is divided between the outlets that are in use at the same time.*

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

The power outlet could be on the instrument panel, the rear of the center console or in the pickup bed.

POWER OUTLET INDICATORS

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.

Indicator Status	Description
On	When the indicator light is on, the outlet is providing power.
Off	When the indicator light is off, there is no power to the outlet.
Flashing	When the indicator light is flashing, the outlet is in a fault mode.

Fault mode

The power outlet temporarily turns off power if the device exceeds the watt limit.

1. Unplug your device.
2. Switch your vehicle off to let the system cool and reset the fault mode.
3. Switch your vehicle back on, but do not plug your device back in.
4. With your vehicle on, make sure the indicator light remains on.
5. Make sure your device does not exceed the power limits and then plug in your device.

Note: *If a fault occurs again, your device may exceed the capacity available from the power outlet.*

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 20 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 240 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

The power outlet could be on the instrument panel, the rear of the center console or in the pickup bed.

WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

Note: *During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.*

LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The charging area is in the front console below the instrument panel.

CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running, or when SYNC is on.

Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.

Note: *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

Note: *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Behavior	Description
Phone misaligned or object between phone and charger detected. Correct the condition to resume charging.	Pop-up window.	The system stops charging your device if the system detects the phone is misaligned, or a foreign metal object is on the charging surface.

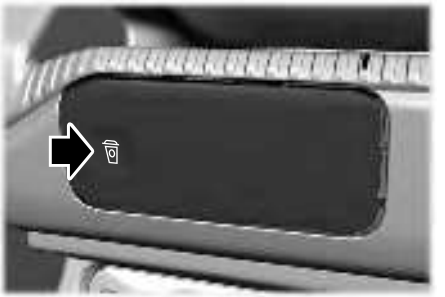
Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CUP HOLDERS (IF EQUIPPED)

LOCATING THE CUP HOLDERS

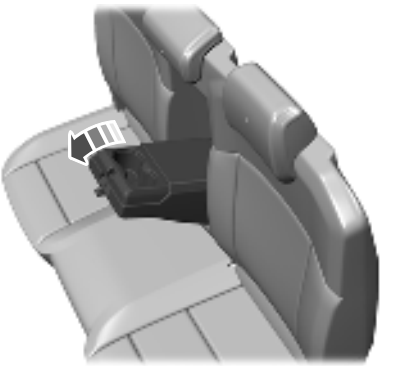
WARNING: Use caution when stowing items or hot drinks in the cup holders. Items could become loose or spill during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Instrument Panel



Press the cup symbol to open the cup holder.

Rear Seat Armrest



Fold the armrest down to use the armrest and cup holder.

GLOVE COMPARTMENT

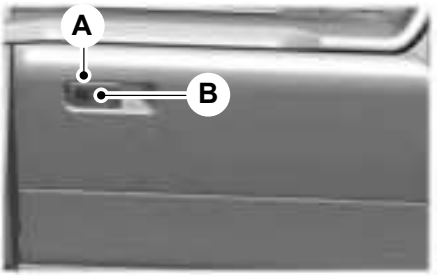
OPENING THE GLOVE COMPARTMENT

Pull the latch toward the driver side to open.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

LOCKING THE GLOVE COMPARTMENT

You can lock lower glove compartment using the key.



A Unlock.
B Lock.

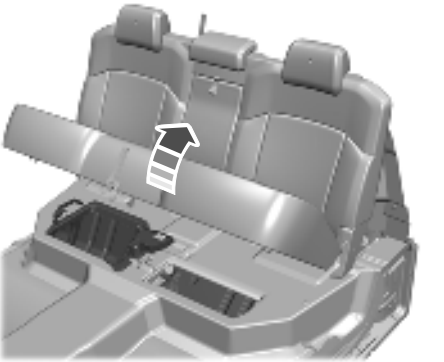
CENTER CONSOLE

OPENING THE CENTER CONSOLE

Pull the latch to open the center console.

UNDER SEAT STORAGE (IF EQUIPPED)

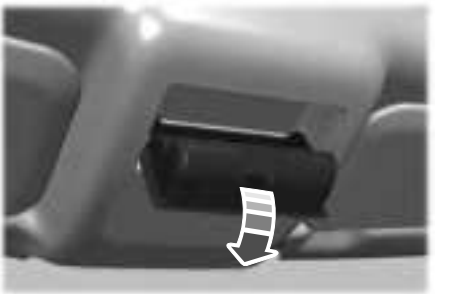
LOCATING THE UNDER SEAT STORAGE COMPARTMENT



Lift the seat to access the storage. See **Folding the Seats** (page 142).

GLASSES HOLDER

LOCATING THE GLASSES HOLDER



Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

The glasses holder is in the overhead console. Press near the rear edge of the door to open.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

IGNITION SWITCH (IF EQUIPPED)

E247596

Note: *Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.*

Note: *Do not leave the key in the ignition for an extended period of time when the engine is not running. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.*

Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position ***0***.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position ***I***. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position ***II***. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Starting the Engine

Turn the key to position ***III***. Release the key when the engine starts.

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH (IF EQUIPPED)

Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake pedal.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Note: *Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain, or after approximately 30 minutes of inactivity in accessory mode.*

Note: *The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

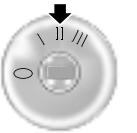
Note: *You need a valid key inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

STARTING THE ENGINE

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) for automatic transmissions or neutral (N) for manual transmissions.



1. Turn the key to position ***II***.

Note: *Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.*

2. Fully press the brake or clutch pedal.

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

3. Turn the key to position ***III***.

Note: *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

Note: *The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Glow Plug Indicator

If it illuminates, wait until the glow plug indicator turns off before starting the engine.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) for automatic transmissions or neutral (N) for manual transmissions.

1. Fully press the brake or clutch pedal.

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

Note: *The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.*

Glow Plug Indicator

The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

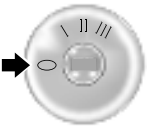
Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) for automatic transmissions or neutral (N) for manual transmissions.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Turn the key to position ***0***.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

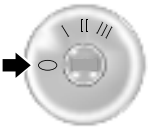
STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) for automatic transmissions or neutral (N) for manual transmissions.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.

4. Press the push button ignition switch.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Turn the key to position ***0***.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) for automatic transmissions or neutral (N) for manual transmissions.
4. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.

2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) for automatic transmissions or neutral (N) for manual transmissions.
4. Apply the parking brake.

AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP - VEHICLES WITH: KEYLESS ENTRY/PUSH BUTTON START

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

Automatic engine stop is a feature that switches the engine off if it has been idling for an extended period to help you save fuel.

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Automatic engine stop turns the engine off. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Switch ***30min max idle*** on or off.

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

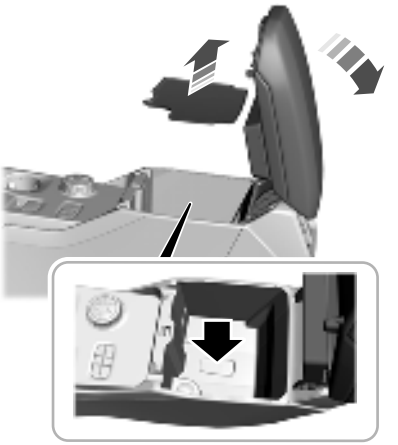
- Pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the countdown.

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

If you are unable to start your vehicle, locate the backup slot at the bottom of the armrest bin.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM



Note: *Make sure to place the key properly into the backup slot.*

Place the key into the backup slot.

With the key in the backup slot, press the brake pedal, then press the push button ignition switch to start your vehicle.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running, the on-board diagnostics system is detecting a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire could be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a powertrain or four-wheel drive fault. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle could cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine, do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: *Make sure that the parking brake is applied.*

Note: *Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).*

2. Turn the key to position ***III*** until the engine starts.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine, do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: *Make sure that the parking brake is applied.*

Note: *Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).*

2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 161).

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system helps reduce fuel consumption by stopping and restarting the engine when your vehicle has stopped. The engine restarts when you release the brake pedal.

In some situations, your vehicle could restart before you release the brake pedal, for example:

- To maintain interior comfort.
- To recharge the battery.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

Press the button to switch the system off.

Note: *Deactivating the system using the button lasts only one key cycle.*

Press the button again to switch the system back on.

STOPPING THE ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch and accelerator pedals.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Note: *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.*

STOPPING THE ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

RESTARTING THE ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Press the clutch pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

RESTARTING THE ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS

WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is turned off.

Note: *You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.*

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Automatic Transmission

Message	Condition	Action
Shift to P, then restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift to park (P) and restart engine.
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.

Manual Transmission

	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear.	Shift into neutral to restart the engine.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO_2 emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

WARNING: Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

FUEL QUALITY

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - DIESEL

WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.

E268503

Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

Note: *We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.*

Note: *We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.*

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL (IF EQUIPPED)

For single cab the fuel filler funnel is in the left-hand side tool bag. For RAP cab the fuel filler funnel is under left-hand rear seat with the vehicle jack.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER

WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER - VEHICLES WITH: CAPLESS FUEL FILL

WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 171).

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.

2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: *If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.*

Note: *You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.*

Note: *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*

ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER - VEHICLES WITH: FUEL CAP

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

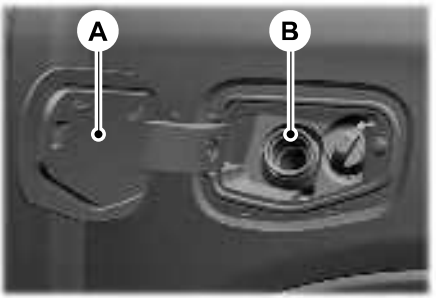
1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Turn the fuel filler cap counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. To replace the fuel filler cap, turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: *If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.*

Note: *You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.*

REFUELING

REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



A Fuel filler door.
B Fuel tank filler pipe.

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - VEHICLES WITH: CAPLESS FUEL FILL

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

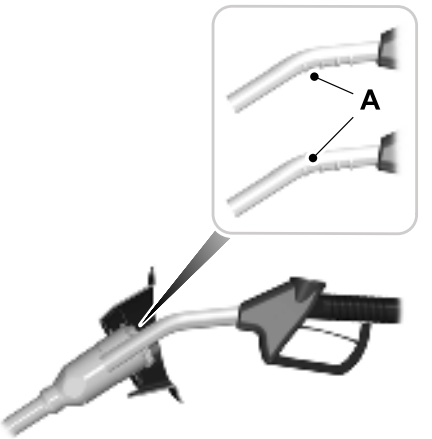
WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

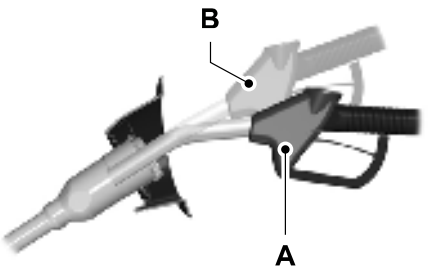
Note: *For additional refueling information, refer to the label on the inside of the fuel filler door.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

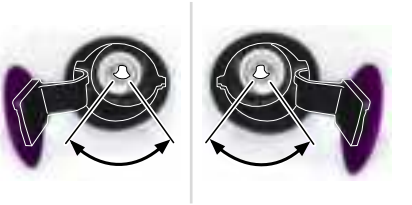
1. Open the fuel filler door. See **Manually Opening the Fuel Filler Door** (page 176).
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position A when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position B can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.

6. When the pump shuts off, wait five seconds, then raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Close the fuel filler door.

Note: *Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle checked immediately.*

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - VEHICLES WITH: FUEL CAP

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

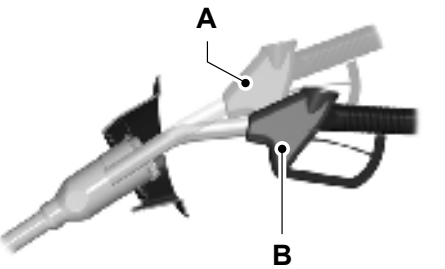
WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

Note: *Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle checked immediately.*

Note: *For additional refueling information, refer to the label on the inside of the fuel filler door.*

1. Press the fuel filler door to open. See **Manually Opening the Fuel Filler Door** (page 176).
2. Fully open the fuel filler door until it engages.
3. Turn the fuel filler cap counterclockwise.



E139203

4. Hold the fuel nozzle in position B during refueling. Holding the fuel nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

5. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
6. Install the fuel cap by rotating it clockwise until it clicks.
7. Close and push the fuel filler door to lock.

Note: *If you must replace the fuel filler cap, only replace with a fuel filler cap designed for your vehicle. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford fuel filler cap is not used.*

MANUALLY OPENING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and release.

Note: *If you are having trouble opening the fuel door, press the unlock button on the key fob or the door twice.*

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank after running out of fuel. Included in the advertised capacity is an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

FUEL CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging) Fuel Economy (Internal Combustion Engine and Not Off-Vehicle Charging) and CO2 Emissions

The declared WLTP fuel/energy consumptions, CO2 emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and electric range. CO2 is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO2 emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS

If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition. Refill your vehicle.
Check fuel fill inlet	Check to make sure the fuel fill inlet is fully closed.

WHAT IS THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The diesel particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful diesel particulates from the exhaust gas.

HOW DOES THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

The diesel particulate filter reduces emissions by trapping exhaust particles before they reach the tailpipe. The system must periodically clean the exhaust particles that gather inside the filter. This is carried out in three ways, passive regeneration, active regeneration and manual regeneration.

Passive Regeneration

In passive regeneration, the normal exhaust system temperature cleans the filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning occurs during normal vehicle operating conditions due to driving patterns.

Active Regeneration

Once the diesel particulate filter is full, active regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the particles.

When the engine control module detects that the diesel particulate filter is nearly full of particulates, and you are not operating your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, messages appear in the information display as a reminder for you to drive your vehicle in order to clean the diesel particulate filter. If you drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, the information display shows a cleaning exhaust filter message.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

WARNING: When the ***Exhaust filter cleaning*** message appears in the information display, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.

WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

Note: *Avoid running out of fuel.*

Note: *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.*

Note: *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Failure to perform active or manual regeneration when instructed could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, your vehicle disables the ability for active and manual regeneration. This could result in irreversible damage your vehicle Warranty may not cover.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

WHAT IS DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

Diesel particulate filter manual regeneration allows you to manually start regeneration of the diesel particulate filter at idle to clean the filter.

Note: *If you are not sure whether your vehicle has this feature, contact your authorized dealer.*

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Stay clear of the exhaust tailpipe during regeneration. Hot exhaust gases can burn you badly.

You may not be able to use manual regeneration if the service engine soon warning lamp appears in the information display.

Note: *During the use of manual regeneration, you may observe a light amount of white smoke. This is normal.*

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION REQUIREMENTS

You can use the manual regeneration feature when a message appears in the information display and you are not able to drive in a manner that allows effective automatic active regeneration or if you choose to manually start the regeneration of the diesel particulate filter while the vehicle is idle.

Before you start manual regeneration, do the following:

- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Shift into park (P) or neutral (N), on stable, level ground.
- Park your vehicle outside of any structure.
- Park your vehicle 3–5 m (10–15 ft) away from any obstructions and away from materials that can easily combust or melt, for example paper, leaves, petroleum products, fuels, plastics and other dry organic material.
- Make sure there is a minimum of 1/8 tank of fuel.
- Make sure all fluids are at proper levels.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION LIMITATIONS

You cannot use manual regeneration until the diesel particulate filter load percentage has reached 100%. The diesel particulate filter load percentage fluctuates up and down when driving your vehicle due to active and passive regenerations.

If your vehicle is operated with significant stationary operation, low speed drive cycles less than 40 km/h (25 mph), short drive cycles, drive time less than 15 minutes or the vehicle does not fully warm up, passive and active regeneration may not sufficiently clean the diesel particulate filter system.

Aftermarket devices or modifications to the exhaust system may reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system as well as cause damage to the exhaust system or engine. This may also degrade vehicle performance and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

STARTING DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

Start with your vehicle engine and when it has reached the normal operating temperature, press the information display control button on the steering wheel. See **Instrument Cluster Display** (page 109).

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, a message requesting permission to initiate filter cleaning appears in the information display. See **Diesel Particulate Filter – Information Messages** (page 181). Answer yes to this prompt and then follow the next prompts regarding exhaust position required to initiate manual regeneration. Be sure to understand each prompt. If you are not sure what is being asked by each prompt, contact an authorized dealer. The display confirms the operation has started and when it has finished. You can also drive to clean the filter.

When the system is at the point of oversaturation, the service engine warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. You cannot initiate filter cleaning. You must have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Once manual regeneration starts, engine speed increases and the cooling fan speed increases. You will hear a change in audible sound due to engine speed and cooling fan speed increases.

It is not necessary to open the hood on the engine compartment. Once manual regeneration completes, the engine speed returns to normal idling. The exhaust system remains very hot for several minutes even after regeneration is complete. Do not reposition the vehicle over materials that could burn until the

exhaust system has had sufficient time to cool. Depending on the amount of soot collected by the diesel particulate filter, ambient temperature and altitude, manual regeneration lasts approximately 30 minutes.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS

If filter service is required, the engine control system warning lamp illuminates in the information display.

If there are any issues with the diesel particulate filter system, the engine control system warning lamp and a service engine soon warning lamp illuminate to inform you that your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Exhaust filter cleaning	Your vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the Diesel Particulate Filter system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the vehicle burns the particles off, the exhaust temperature will return to normal levels. This message is NORMAL.
Exhaust filter overloaded Drive to clean	The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 48 km/h (30 mph) when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off.
Exhaust filter overloaded Clean now	
Exhaust filter at limit Clean now	The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 48 km/h (30 mph) when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off.
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now	
Exhaust filter drive completed	Your diesel particulate filter is clean.

Message	Action
Exhaust filter cleaned	Your diesel particulate filter is clean (OCR Only).
Exhaust filter cleaning stopped	The manual regeneration process has stopped (OCR Only).
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	You must have your vehicle serviced by an authorized dealer. Ignoring this warning message could lead to reduced drivability and customer expense, including damage to the diesel particulate filter. Your new vehicle warranty may not cover this damage.

WHAT IS THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM

The selective catalytic reduction system helps reduce emission levels of oxides of nitrogen from the exhaust system.

HOW DOES THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM WORK

The selective catalytic reduction system injects diesel exhaust fluid into the exhaust system to enable correct selective catalytic reduction system function.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Keep AdBlue® out of reach of children. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. In case of contact with your eyes, immediately flush with water and get prompt medical attention. In case of contact with your skin, immediately clean with soap and water. If you swallow any AdBlue®, drink plenty of water and immediately seek medical attention.

WARNING: Only refill the AdBlue® tank in a well-ventilated area. When you remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap or an AdBlue® container cap, ammonia vapors may escape. Ammonia vapors can be irritating to skin, eyes and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapors can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose and cause coughing and watery eyes.

WARNING: Immediately refill the AdBlue® fluid when low and replace when contaminated. Drive with caution and be careful where you stop because you cannot restart your vehicle until you refill or replace the fluid.

WARNING: Tampering with or disabling the selective catalytic reduction system results in severe vehicle performance limitation, eventually your vehicle not starting.

Do not dilute the AdBlue® with water or any other liquid.

Do not put AdBlue® in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Do not put fuel or any additives in the AdBlue® tank. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.

Make sure you immediately rinse any spills of AdBlue® on painted surfaces. Damage to the painted surface could occur.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM GUIDELINES

Note: *The use and refilling of Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue ®) is mandatory for your vehicle to comply with the legal emission requirements.*

- Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.
- Do not add fuel or any additives to the Adblue tank. This will cause damage not covered by vehicle warranty.
- Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.
- Do not dilute with water or any other liquid.
- Do not reuse an empty fluid container.
- Do not store in direct sunlight.
- Store the AdBlue® at temperatures between -5°C (23°F) and 20°C (68°F).
- Do not store fluid containers in your vehicle.
- The fluid is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.
- Make sure you immediately rinse any spills of AdBlue® on painted surfaces. Damage to the painted surface could occur.

The AdBlue® tank filler pipe is next to the fuel tank filler pipe and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at an AdBlue® filling station or an AdBlue® container.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK IN COLD WEATHER

AdBlue® may freeze when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F). Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows the fluid to operate below -11°C (12°F). If you overfill the AdBlue® tank and the fluid freezes, it may cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Note: *It may not be possible to fully fill the AdBlue® tank when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F).*

Note: *If the AdBlue® tank is frozen, it could not correctly display the fluid level or recognize when you fill the tank. The AdBlue® level updates when the tank completely thaws out.*

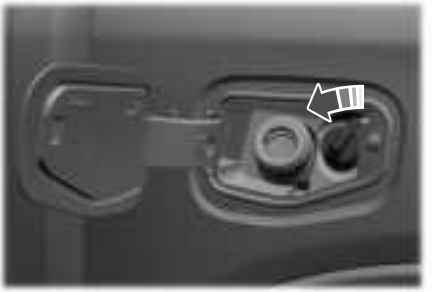
FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A FUEL STATION PUMP

WARNING: Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.

WARNING: Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

Filling the AdBlue® tank using a fuel station pump is similar to refueling your vehicle.

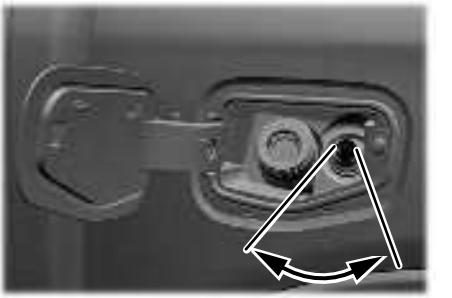
1. Open the fuel filler door.



2. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.

Note: *The AdBlue® tank has a blue filler cap.*

3. Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle.



4. Operate the AdBlue® pump nozzle within the area shown.

Note: *The pump nozzle shuts off when the tank is full.*

5. Slightly raise the AdBlue® pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Using incorrect fluid could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A PORTABLE CONTAINER

WARNING: Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.

WARNING: Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

Use containers that have a seal on the spout.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the fluid container cap.
2. Place the spout onto the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.

3. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
4. Insert the spout into the AdBlue® tank filler pipe until the seal on the spout fully seats.
5. Pour the fluid into the tank.

Note: *The fluid stops flowing when the tank is full.*

6. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
7. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back into the container.
8. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
9. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® container and replace the cap.
10. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Using incorrect fluid could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM STATUS

The information display shows a series of messages about the amount of AdBlue® available.

A systems check displays messages indicating the amount of AdBlue® available or displays a warning message indicating the approximate distance remaining as the fluid in the AdBlue® tank nears empty. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Information Messages** (page 187).

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID CONSUMPTION

AdBlue® consumption is directly related to fuel consumption and is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing. The AdBlue® consumption may vary between 1% and 6% of the fuel consumption but could be more under extreme conditions such as heavy towing.

AdBlue® consumption is specified for a vehicle variant and not for a single car.

ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

See **AdBlue® Capacity and Specification** (page 428).

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS

The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects the fluid is low or a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reduction system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

AdBlue® Level

Message	Action
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX km Refill soon AdBlue® low Range : XXXX mls Refill soon	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Message	Action
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX mls	
AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine	The AdBlue® tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank. The minimum AdBlue® refill quantity required to restart the engine is available in the information display.

Note: *When filling the AdBlue® tank from empty, allow a short period of time for the increased AdBlue® level to register.*

Note: *If the AdBlue® tank freezes at low level, the remaining distance shown in the information display could be reduced.*

AdBlue® Malfunction

Message	Action
AdBlue® system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system Service required to start engine	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WHAT IS THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 335).
- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 170).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

Note: *Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.*

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – WARNING LAMPS

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.

Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle warranty.

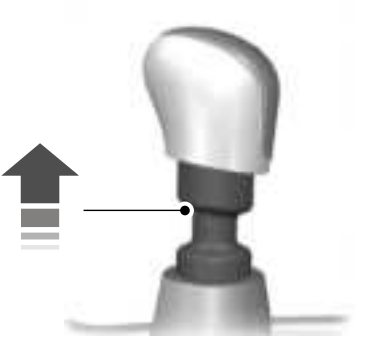
Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, or premature transmission wear to components or damage to the transmission.

If any gear is not fully engaged, fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into desired gear.

SHIFTING INTO REVERSE

Do not shift into reverse when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.

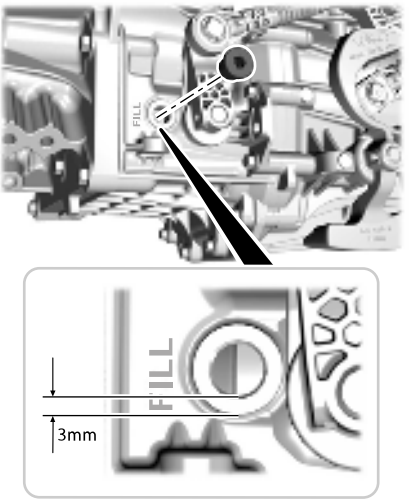


3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS

It illuminates to advise you that shifting gear may give better fuel economy or lower emissions.

CHECKING THE MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID LEVEL



Transmission fluid fill level is 3 mm (0.12 in) from the oil fill plug.

CHECKING THE CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 210).

MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

See **Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification** (page 429).

CLUTCH FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 415).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

PARK (P)

WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Note: *A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).*

Note: *Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.*

Note: *Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.*

Note: *Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.*

Note: *The electronic parking brake could apply when the selector is in park (P). See* ***Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake*** *(page 216).*

Note: *Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P). See* ***How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work*** *(page 195).*

Note: *A tone could sound when you select park (P).*

REVERSE (R)

WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)

WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

MANUAL (M) - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC SHIFT

In manual (M) you can select a specific gear. See **Manually Shifting Gears** (page 193).

Note: *We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 325).*

MANUAL (M) - VEHICLES WITH: MECHANICAL SHIFT

To select manual mode, move the selector lever to the manual (M) position.

This position allows you to change gears up or down as desired using + or - buttons on the shifter lever.

To return to the normal drive (D) position, move the selector lever back to the (D) position.

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR

The selector is on the center console.

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Move the lever to select a position.

Note: *The position illuminates on the selector.*

3. Press the manual (M) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to enter or exit mode.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

Note: *The position could illuminate on the transmission selector.*

MANUALLY SHIFTING GEARS

SHIFTING USING THE BUTTONS ON THE SELECTOR LEVER

The instrument cluster displays the current gear. The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear. Your vehicle will not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

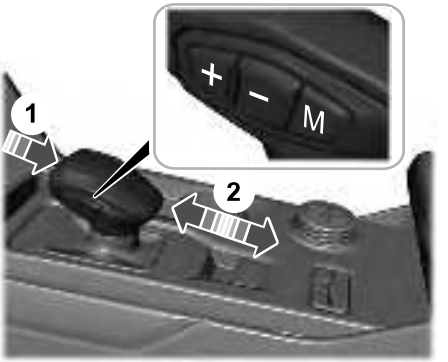
Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

Note: *Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by vehicle warranty.*

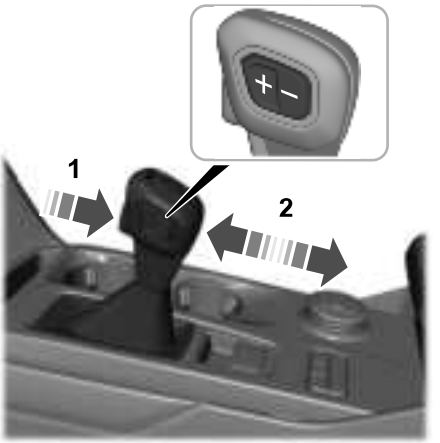
Note: *Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Electronic Shifter



Mechanical Shifter



Manually Shifting Gears in Manual (M)

Use this feature to select a specific gear.

Note: *We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads, or when towing a trailer. See* ***Towing a Trailer*** *(page 325).*

Shift to manual (M) to switch the feature on.

Press the upper (+) button to upshift.

Press the lower (-) button to downshift.

Shift to drive (D) to switch the feature off.

TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC SHIFT

WHAT IS TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

This mode keeps your vehicle in neutral (N), for a limited time, when you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off.

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE LIMITATIONS

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

ENTERING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Power your vehicle on.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Note: *An instructional message appears.*

5. Press the manual (M) button.

Note: *A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.*

6. Release the brake pedal.

Note: *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

7. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

Note: *The neutral (N) indicator on the transmission selector may flash in this mode.*

EXITING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

USING PROGRESSIVE RANGE SELECTION

Progressive range selection gives you the ability to lock out gears from the automatic shifting range. This could provide you with an improved driving experience by reducing transmission shifts, for example, in slippery conditions or steep slopes.

With the transmission in drive (D), press the **-** button to begin to switch the feature on.

Press the **-** button again to continue locking out higher gears. Beginning with the highest gear, the instrument cluster will indicate the current gear and highest gear available. For example, press the - button twice to lock out 10th and 9th gears.

Note: *The instrument cluster will indicate the current gear and highest gear available.*

Press the + button to unlock gears to allow the transmission to shift to higher gears.

Note: *The transmission automatically shifts within the gear range you select.*

AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC SHIFT

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P)

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) WORK

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with your seatbelt unlatched.
- You unlatch the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

Note: *Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. See* ***Starting and Stopping the Engine*** *(page 157).*

AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) LIMITATIONS

Automatic return to park (P) may not work if the door ajar sensor or seatbelt sensor are malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC SHIFT

Transmission Not In Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS - VEHICLES WITH: MECHANICAL SHIFT

Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if any of the following occur:

- You switch your vehicle off before shifting into park (P).
- You open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

HOW DOES FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE WORK - 4X4 WITH PART TIME ENGAGEMENT

4x4 With Part Time Engagement (If Equipped)

This system offers the driver two-wheel drive high, four-wheel drive high, and four-wheel drive low as available modes of operation.

When you select four-wheel drive high or four-wheel drive low, the system provides mechanically locked four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels for use in off-road or slippery conditions such as deep snow, sand or mud.

Selecting four-wheel drive low also provides additional gearing for increased torque multiplication for conditions like deep sand, steep slopes, or pulling heavy objects.

HOW DOES FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE WORK - ADVANCED 4X4 WITH 4A MODE

Advanced 4x4 With Automatic On Demand Engagement (If Equipped)

This system monitors various vehicle sensory inputs to provide an increased level of performance. This system offers the driver two-wheel drive high (2H), four-wheel drive auto (4A), four-wheel drive high (4H) and four-wheel drive low (4L) as available modes of operation.

When you select four-wheel drive auto (4A), the system continuously varies power to the front wheels for optimum performance for all on-road conditions.

When you select four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L), the system provides electronically locked power to the front and rear wheels for use in off-road or slippery conditions such as deep snow, sand or mud.

Selecting four-wheel drive low (4L) also provides additional gearing for increased torque multiplication for conditions like deep sand, steep slopes, or pulling heavy objects.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

Do not use four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L) mode on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so can produce excessive noise, increase tire wear and damage drive components.

4H or 4L mode is only for use on consistently slippery or loose surfaces. Use of 4L mode on these surfaces could produce some noise, such as occasional clunks, but should not damage drive components.

For vehicles with an electronic shift-on-the-fly transfer case, the driveline could become mechanically blocked when attempting to shift out of a four-wheel drive mode on dry, hard surfaced roads.

Note: *If your vehicle is equipped with the 4x4 part-time selectable engagement transfer case and you are transitioning from consistently loose or slippery surfaces, be sure the four-wheel drive system is not mechanically blocked once you are on dry, hard surfaced roads in two-wheel drive high.*

Note: *In certain scenarios, where the four-wheel drive system has difficulty engaging, a* ***To engage 4x4 slow to 3 mph*** *or* ***To engage 4x4 slow to 5 km/h*** *message could appear in the instrument cluster. This message may also appear when engaging the four-wheel drive system in extreme cold climates at the beginning of the drive cycle. Once the driveline warms up, shifting to four-wheel drive can resume as normal.*

Operating Four-Wheel Drive with a Spare or Mismatched Tires

On four-wheel drive vehicles, the size of the spare tire can affect the four-wheel drive system.

If there is a significant difference between the size of the spare tire and the remaining tires, you could have limited four-wheel drive functionality, added noise, discomfort and driveline damage.

Due to normal tire wear, your spare tire is not necessarily the same size as your on-road tires, which makes your spare tire a dissimilar size. Use the spare tire on a limited basis only.

When driving with a dissimilar wheel and tire assembly do not:

- Exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when operating in a four-wheel drive mode.
- Select a four-wheel drive mode unless the vehicle is stationary.
- Use a four-wheel drive mode on dry pavement.

You could have limited four-wheel drive functionality when driving with a dissimilar wheel and tire assembly, especially when driving in a mechanically locked four-wheel drive mode. You can experience the following:

- Additional noise from the transfer case or other drive components.
- Difficulty shifting in and out of a mechanically locked four-wheel drive mode.
- Driveline component damage.

Note: *When driving with a spare tire, do not switch on four-wheel drive mode unless you need to get your vehicle unstuck.*

Immediately after getting your vehicle unstuck, shift to 2H by performing the following steps:

1. Come to a stop on a flat, horizontal surface.
2. Shift the transmission to park (P) for automatic transmissions and neutral (N) for manual transmissions.
3. Switch to two-wheel drive mode.
4. Shift the transmission to reverse (R).
5. Shift the transmission to drive (D) for automatic transmissions and to first gear for manual transmissions to make sure the transfer case system is not trapped in place.

Mechanical Shift Blocking

On vehicles with an electronic shift-on-the-fly transfer case, the transfer case distributes torque to the front wheels by mechanically interlocking the front and rear driveshafts together. Various external factors can affect shifting performance of this type of system including, but not limited to:

- Vehicle acceleration.
- Dissimilar tire sizes.
- High steering input.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

For vehicles with an electronic shift-on-the-fly transfer case, when shifting into two-wheel drive high (2H) on dry, hard surfaced roads, we recommend you preform the following procedure to reduce the likelihood of a mechanical shift block:

1. While driving straight, come to a complete stop on a flat, horizontal surface.
2. Shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmissions or press the clutch for vehicles with a manual transmission.
3. Select 2H and wait for the 2H LED to become solid.
4. Shift the transmission into reverse (R) for automatic transmissions or select reverse (R) and release the clutch for vehicles with a manual transmission. Allow the vehicle to roll back approximately 1 m (3 ft) and press the brake.
5. Shift the transmission into drive (D) for automatic transmissions or press the clutch in and select a forward gear and release the clutch for vehicles with a manual transmission. Allow the vehicle to roll forward approximately 1 m (3 ft).

If the system is mechanically blocked or if the system detects a mechanical shift block at speed after two-wheel drive high (2H) has been selected, a message can appear momentarily indicating that four-wheel drive is unable to disengage. One or more of the following actions can relieve the mechanical shift block:

- Momentary acceleration.
- Momentary braking.
- Bringing the vehicle to a stop.
- Shifting the transmission to neutral (N) and back to drive (D).
- Shifting the transmission to reverse(R) and back to drive (D).
- Driving the vehicle around a tight turn at a slow speed.

SWITCHING FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE ON AND OFF

A vehicle that comes with four-wheel drive, when selected, has the ability to use all four wheels to power itself. This increases traction, which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

On some four-wheel drive models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to four-wheel drive while the vehicle is moving can cause a momentary clunk and ratcheting sound. These sounds are normal as the front drivetrain comes up to speed and are not cause for concern.

SELECTING A FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE MODE - 4X4 WITH PART TIME ENGAGEMENT

Depending on the vehicle configuration, your vehicle could have either a push button or a rotary four-wheel drive mode selector. Push the button or rotate the four-wheel drive mode selector to select the preferred four-wheel drive mode.

- 2H - Two-wheel drive high.
- 4H - Four-wheel drive high. See **Four-Wheel Drive High** (page 202).
- 4L - Four-wheel drive low. See **Four-Wheel Drive Low** (page 202).

Note: *Do not perform this operation if the rear wheels are slipping, while applying the accelerator pedal or when driving in a tight turn.*

Note: *Momentarily releasing the accelerator pedal while a shift in progress message displays improves engagement or disengagement performance.*

Note: *Do not perform this operation when cruise control or trail control is selected and active. The system may not shift as expected.*

Note: *If your vehicle is equipped with a push button four-wheel drive mode selector and the light is solid, the system has achieved the preferred four-wheel drive mode. When a selected four-wheel drive mode light is blinking, the system is attempting to shift to that specific mode.*

Note: *If your vehicle is equipped with a rotary four-wheel drive mode selector, the selector position indicates the preferred four-wheel drive mode. This does not indicate that the system has achieved the preferred four-wheel drive mode.*

Shifting to or from Four-Wheel Drive Low

1. Bring your vehicle to a speed of 0 km/h (0 mph).
2. For vehicles with an automatic transmission, place in neutral (N). For vehicles with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal.
3. Push or rotate the four-wheel drive mode selector to the preferred four-wheel drive mode.

Note: *A **4x4 Shift in Progress** message appears in the instrument cluster display indicating the shift is in progress. If any of the previous shift conditions are not met, the shift does not occur and the instrument cluster display guides the driver through the proper shifting procedures.*

Note: *If **Shift Delayed Drive Forward** displays in the instrument cluster display, place the transmission in a forward gear, move your vehicle forward approximately 1.5 m (5 ft), and shift the transmission back to neutral (N) to allow the transfer case to complete the range shift.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

SELECTING A FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE MODE - ADVANCED 4X4 WITH 4A MODE

Push the button to select the four-wheel drive mode.

- 2H - Two-wheel drive high.
- 4A - Four-wheel drive auto. See **Four-Wheel Drive Auto** (page 202).
- 4H - Four-wheel drive high. See **Four-Wheel Drive High** (page 202).
- 4L - Four-wheel drive low. See **Four-Wheel Drive Low** (page 202).

Note: *Do not perform this operation if the rear wheels are slipping or while applying the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *When the light is solid, the system has achieved the desired four-wheel drive mode. When a selected four-wheel drive mode LED is blinking, the system is attempting to shift to that specific mode.*

Note: *When all lights are blinking have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.*

Shifting to or from Four-Wheel Drive Low

1. Bring your vehicle to a speed of 0 km/h (0 mph).
2. For vehicles with an automatic transmission, place in neutral (N). For vehicles with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal.
3. Push the 4L on the four-wheel drive mode selector.

Note: *A **4x4 shift in progress** message appears in the information display indicating the shift is in progress. If any of the previous shift conditions are not met, the shift will not occur and the information display guides the driver through the proper shifting procedures.*

Note: *If **Shift delayed Pull forward** displays in the information display, place the transmission in a forward gear, move your vehicle forward approximately 1.5 m (5 ft), and shift the transmission back to neutral (N) to allow the transfer case to complete the range shift.*

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE MODES

TWO-WHEEL DRIVE HIGH

Two-wheel drive high is for general on-road driving. Power is sent to the rear wheels only.

Note: *Two-wheel drive high can turn on or off based on Drive Mode selection See **Drive Mode Control** (page 270).*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE AUTO (If Equipped)

Four-wheel drive auto provides electronically controlled four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels, as required, for increased traction in varying on-road conditions. The four-wheel drive auto tuning varies based on selected Drive Mode. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 270).

Note: *Four-wheel drive auto can turn on or off automatically based on Drive Mode selection. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 270).*

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE HIGH

Four-wheel drive high provides electronically or mechanically locked four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels for use in off-road or winter conditions such as deep snow, sand or mud. This mode is not for use on dry pavement.

Note: *Four-wheel drive high can turn on or off automatically based on Drive Mode selection. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 270).*

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE LOW

Four-wheel drive low provides electronically or mechanically locked four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels for use on low traction surfaces, but does so with additional gearing for increased torque multiplication. This mode is only for off-road conditions such as deep sand, steep slopes, or pulling heavy objects.

Note: *Four-wheel drive low can turn on or off automatically based on drive mode selection. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 270).*

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE INDICATORS

When the indicator lights are solid the system has achieved the desired four-wheel drive mode.

Note: *Depending on vehicle configuration, if your vehicle is equipped with a rotary four-wheel drive mode selector the indicator lights will blink when the system is attempting to shift to that specific four-wheel drive mode.*

Two-wheel Drive High

Illuminates briefly when you select two-wheel drive high.

Four-wheel Drive Auto (If Equipped)

Illuminates when you select four-wheel drive auto.

Four-wheel Drive High

Illuminates when you select four-wheel drive high.

Four-wheel Drive Low

Illuminates when you select four-wheel drive low.

TRANSFER CASE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

See **Transfer Case Fluid Capacity and Specification** (page 431).

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE – WARNING LAMPS

Illuminates when a four-wheel drive or power train fault is present.

Note: *When a system fault is present, the system can typically remain in whichever mode was selected prior to the fault condition occurring. It does not default to two-wheel drive in all circumstances. When this warning is displayed, have your vehicle serviced by an authorized dealer.*

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
For 4L slow to a stop	Displays when the driver attempts to shift into four-wheel drive low (4L) when traveling at too high of a speed.
For 4L, shift to N.	Displays when the driver attempts to shift into four-wheel drive low (4L) without the transmission in neutral (N).
For 4L, press clutch.	Displays when the driver attempts to shift into four-wheel drive low (4L) without the clutch pedal pressed.
To exit 4L slow to a stop	Displays when the driver attempts to shift out of four-wheel drive low (4L) when traveling at too high of a speed.
To exit 4L, shift to N.	Displays when the driver attempts to shift out of four-wheel drive low (4L) without the transmission in neutral (N).
To exit 4L, press clutch.	Displays when the driver attempts to shift out of four-wheel drive low (4L) without the clutch pedal pressed.
4x4 shift in progress	Displays when the four-wheel drive system is shifting into and out of two-wheel drive high (2H) or between high and low ranges.
4x4 temporarily locked	Displays when the four-wheel drive system detects a driving condition which temporarily requires greater four-wheel drive performance. The system resumes normal function after the system no longer detects these driving conditions.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Message	Details
4x4 temporarily disabled	Displays when the four-wheel system detects elevated system temperature and temporarily stops providing power to the front wheels. The system resumes normal function when the system temperature returns to normal.
4x4 Restored	Displays when the four-wheel drive system resumes normal function.
Shift delayed Pull forward	Displays when the transfer case is not able to complete a shift and requires forward motion to complete the shift.
Shift to Neutral	Displays when the system requires an additional transmission shift to neutral (N) to complete a transfer case shift.
4x4 OFF	Displays when the system has become disabled due to mismatched tires or an external fault.
Selected 4x4 mode not available in current drive mode	Displays when the driver selects a four-wheel drive mode that is not allowed in the currently drive mode.
To engage 4x4 slow to 3 mph	Displays when the system is unable to engage four-wheel drive high (4H) and requires the driver to slow down before attempting to engage.
To engage 4x4 slow to 5 km/h	Displays when the system is unable to engage four-wheel drive high (4H) and requires the driver to slow down before attempting to engage.
To engage 4x4 release accelerator pedal	Displays when the four-wheel drive system requires the accelerator pedal to be released to perform the shift into four-wheel drive mode.
4x4 Performance reduced See manual	Displays when the system has entered a degraded mode due to mismatched tires.
Check 4x4	A four-wheel drive system fault is present. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
4x4 unable to disengage See manual	Displays when the four-wheel drive system detects a mechanical shift block when shifting out of four-wheel drive high (4H). See **Four-Wheel Drive Limitations** (page 197).

WHAT IS THE ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL

The electronic locking differential is a device housed in the rear axle and when activated, allows both wheels on that axle to turn at the same speed. The electronic locking differential can provide additional traction should your vehicle become stuck.

You can activate the electronic locking differential and shift it on the fly within the operating speed range. The electronic locking differential automatically disengages when the vehicle speed exceeds a set value and automatically reengages when the vehicle speed goes below a set value. See **Switching the Electronic Locking Differential On and Off** (page 205). It also automatically engages based on certain selected drive modes. See **Four-Wheel Drive Modes** (page 201).

The electronic locking differential is for use in mud, rocks, sand, or any off-road condition where you need maximum traction. It is not for use on dry pavement.

Note: *The electronic locking differential is for off-road use only and not for use on dry pavement. Using the electronic locking differentials on dry pavement results in increased tire wear, noise and vibration or driveline damage.*

Note: *Switching the electronic locking differential off while turning results in disengagement difficulties. If the electronic locking differential has difficulty disengaging, release the accelerator pedal and turn the steering wheel back and forth in small increments while maintaining control and following a straight line.*

SWITCHING THE ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL ON AND OFF

Activating the Electronic Locking Differential

You can activate the rear electronic locking differential by pressing the switch on the center switch pack or through the touchscreen display. See **Off-Road Screen** (page 329).

Rear Electronic Locking Differential Engagement Speed and Availability

Four-Wheel Drive Modes	Maximum Engagement Speed	Automatic Disengagement Speed	Automatic Re-Engagement Speed
Normal (2H,4A, 4H)	32 km/h (20 mph)	41 km/h (25 mph)	32 km/h (20 mph)
Eco (2H, 4A, 4H)	32 km/h (20 mph)	41 km/h (25 mph)	32 km/h (20 mph)
Sport (2H, 4A, 4H)	32 km/h (20 mph)	41 km/h (25 mph)	32 km/h (20 mph)
Slippery (2H, 4A, 4H)	32 km/h (20 mph)	41 km/h (25 mph)	32 km/h (20 mph)
Deep Snow/Sand (4H, 4L)[1]			
Mud/Ruts (4H, 4L)[1]			

Four-Wheel Drive Modes	Maximum Engagement Speed	Automatic Disengagement Speed	Automatic Re-Engagement Speed
Baja (2H, 4H, 4L)	No Speed Limit	No Speed Limit	No Speed Limit
Rock Crawl (4L)[1]			

[1] Automatically engages when you select these drive modes. You have the ability to manually override the automatic engagement by pressing the electronic locking differential switch.

Four-Wheel Drive Modes	Maximum Engagement Speed	Automatic Disengagement Speed	Automatic Re-Engagement Speed
4L	No Speed Limit	No Speed Limit	No Speed Limit

Note: *Do not perform this operation when cruise control or trail control is selected and active. The system may not engage or disengage as expected.*

ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL INDICATORS

Rear electronic locking differential indicator.

If the rear electronic locking differential indicator in the instrument cluster is amber, both wheels of the indicated axle are locked together providing additional traction.

If the rear electronic locking differential is selected and the indicator in the instrument cluster is gray or turns from amber to gray while driving, one of the following has occurred:

- Your vehicle speed is too high.
- The accelerator pedal is too high during an engagement attempt.
- Your vehicle is experiencing an anti-lock brake activation.
- The left and right wheel speed difference is too high during an engagement attempt.

If the rear electronic locking differential is selected and the indicator in the instrument cluster does not illuminate, one of the following has occurred:

- The rear electronic locking differential is not allowed in the current drive mode and is accompanied by SELECTED LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL NOT AVAILABLE IN CURRENT DRIVE MODE in the instrument cluster display.
- The rear electronic locking differential is not allowed in the current 4x4 mode and is accompanied by SELECTED LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL NOT AVAILABLE IN CURRENT 4x4 MODE in the instrument cluster display.

- The system has malfunctioned and is accompanied by CHECK LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL in the instrument cluster display. See your authorized dealer for assistance.
- The rear electronic locking differential was selected above allowable vehicle speed and is accompanied by TO ENGAGE LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL SLOW TO XX MPH/KM/H in the instrument cluster display.

ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Selected locking differential not available in current drive mode	The selected electronic locking differential is not available in the current drive mode. See **Four-Wheel Drive Modes** (page 201).
Selected locking differential not available in current 4x4 mode	The selected electronic locking differential is not available in the current four-wheel drive mode. See **Four-Wheel Drive Modes** (page 201).
To engage locking differential release accelerator pedal	The selected electronic locking differential requires that you release the accelerator pedal in order to engage.
Check Locking Differential	An electronic locking differential system fault is present. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
To Engage Locking Differential Slow to XX mph/km/h	Slow the vehicle to the displayed speed to allow the electronic locking differential to engage.

The following conditions affect the electronic locking differential:

- Based on the drive mode selected, the rear electronic locking differential does not engage if your vehicle speed is above 32 km/h (20 mph).
- Based on the drive mode selected, the electronic locking differential automatically disengages at speeds above 41 km/h (25 mph) and automatically re-engages at speeds below 32 km/h (20 mph).
- The electronic locking differential may not engage if you press the accelerator pedal during an engagement attempt. A message may display in the instrument cluster instructing you to release the accelerator pedal.
- The AdvanceTrac system has the ability to take control of the electronic locking differential and disable it during driving maneuvers when necessary.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Operating Electronic Locking Differential With a Spare or Mismatched Tires

On vehicles with an electronic locking differential, the size of the spare tire can affect performance of the system. If there is a significant difference between the two rear tires or two front tires, you may have limited electronic locking differential functionality. If the electronic locking differential has difficulty disengaging, release the accelerator pedal and turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction when rolling. We recommend engaging and disengaging the electronic locking differential at a stop when you mount a spare or mismatched tire on either axle.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country where your vehicle was originally built, the stoplamps could flash during heavy braking. The hazard warning flashers could also turn on when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: *If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.*

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM INDICATORS

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

If the warning lamp illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The warning lamp also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

The warning lamp illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The warning lamp also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 362).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID

WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the ***MIN*** mark or above the ***MAX*** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.
2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: *To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.*

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 415).

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 431).

BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS

WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

BRAKE

The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

BRAKES – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Brake fluid level low	The brake fluid level is low, check the brake system immediately. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 210).
Check brake system	Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Is it normal for my brakes to make noise?

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding, or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake lining could be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

There is an electrical motor sound when I press on the brake pedal or activate the park brake switch. Is this normal?

Yes, those sounds are the electronic brake booster or the electronic park brake operating.

Note: *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is normal as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See* ***Cleaning Wheels*** *(page 387).*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking lever upward to its fullest extent.

Note: *Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking lever upward to its fullest extent.

Note: *Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

RELEASING THE PARKING BRAKE

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking brake lever upward to its fullest extent.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving.

If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Park brake applied	You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

The switch is on the center console.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: *You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNING: Apply the parking brake and make sure your vehicle is in park (P). Power the vehicle off and remove the keys or remote control whenever you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

The electronic parking brake switch is on the center console.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: *You can apply the electric parking brake when the power is off.*

Note: *The electric parking brake could apply when you shift into park (P). See* ***Park (P)*** *(page 192).*

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

Pull the switch up and hold it.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

Note: *Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.*

MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull the switch upward and hold it.
3. Shift into gear.
4. Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.
5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE

WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 335).

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

Brake System

It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

Electric Parking Brake

When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Parking Brake

Message	Details
Park brake on	The electric parking brake is fully applied.
Park brake off	The electric parking brake is fully released.
Park brake System overheated	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition where components may have been subject to overheating. Contact an authorized dealer.
Park brake Press brake and switch to release	The electric parking brake is set and you attempted a manual release without pressing the brake.
Park brake Use switch to release	With the electric parking brake set, you attempted an automatic release with no success. Perform a manual release.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake is set and your vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph). Release the parking brake before continued driving.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Park Brake not released	The electric parking brake is not fully released.
Park brake Maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode to allow rear brake service. Contact an authorized dealer.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Some functionality may still be available. Contact an authorized dealer.
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

Press and hold the brake pedal.

Pull the switch upward and hold it.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.

Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST

Reverse braking assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R). Using sensors on the rear of the vehicle, it can detect a possible collision and apply the brakes. If full braking occurs, the system attempts to stop the vehicle a safe distance from the obstacle.

HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST WORK

Reverse braking assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 2–12 km/h (1–7 mph).

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system.

REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

Note: *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Note: *The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.*

Note: *The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

Note: *Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

Note: *When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.*

Note: *You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.*

SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Switch ***Reverse Brake Assist*** on or off.

Note: *The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid, cross traffic alert or traction control is off.*

Note: *If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert the reverse braking assist relies on input from the rear parking aid and rear camera sensors.*

Note: *The default setting is on in some regions.*

OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.

A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Reverse Brake Assist not available See manual	Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. Make sure the parking aids and cross traffic alert systems are on. If the message remains on, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist malfunction	Displays when a system error has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.

REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is reverse braking assist unavailable?

- Make sure the reverse braking assist is on. See **Switching Reverse Braking Assist On and Off** (page 220).
- Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert system is on if equipped. See **Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off** (page 295).
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 238).
- Make sure the traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 226).

Note: *The traction control automatically turns off if four-wheel drive low and certain drive modes such as mud/ruts and snow/sand is activated.*

- The vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.
- An anti-lock brake, traction control or stability control event may have occurred. Reverse braking assist resumes operation when the event is complete.
- Make sure the rear view camera and 360 degree camera are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the camera. If the message still appears after cleaning the camera, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, have the system checked.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert and rear parking aid sensors are not blocked or faulty. See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 295). See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 238).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- Reverse braking assist does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

Note: *If the answers to why the system is unavailable do not assist in returning reverse braking assist to available, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist makes it easier for you to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without using the parking brake.

HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the vehicle is stationary beyond the Hill Start Assist hold time.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING HILL START ASSIST ON AND OFF

Hill start assist is active when you switch the ignition on. You cannot switch the system on or off.

HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Displays when system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF

WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

You can switch the system on or off by accessing the menu on the touchscreen.

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.

Note: *You can only switch the system on after you close the driver door and fasten your seatbelt.*

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

Note: *When using an automatic car wash, make sure to switch auto hold off, or shift to neutral (N) with the brake pedal applied to ensure auto hold is not active.*

USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: *The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.*

Note: *Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See* ***Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake*** *(page 216).*

Note: *The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) while pressing the brake pedal.*

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use active park assist.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

AUTO HOLD INDICATORS

Illuminates when the system is active.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your wheels begin to spin, the loss of traction can compromise steering control and stability of the vehicle. The traction control system applies the brakes to individual wheels and when needed, reduces engine power at the same time to increase traction.

SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF

WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Switching the System Off

The switch for the stability and traction control system is on the instrument panel.

When you switch the system off, a message and an illuminated icon appear on the instrument cluster.

Use the switch again to return the traction control system to normal operation.

Note: *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

Note: *When you place your vehicle into four-wheel drive low (4L), the traction control disables. Traction control resumes when you put your vehicle back into two-wheel drive or four-wheel drive high (4H).*

Note: *For additional information on the traction and stability control systems. See* ***Stability Control*** *(page 228).*

TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR

Stability and Traction Control Indicator

If the indicator does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

The traction control off indicator illuminates when you switch the traction control system off, or when an alternative stability control mode is selected that requires the traction control off depending on the drive mode selected.

TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS

System Messages

The traction control light temporarily illuminates on start-up and flashes when activated by a driving condition.

The traction control off light temporarily illuminates on start-up and stays on:

- When you switch the traction control system off.
- When you select an alternative stability control mode.
- If a problem occurs in the system.

TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traction control off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction control on	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK

WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

Electronic Stability Control

Electronic stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

Roll Stability Control

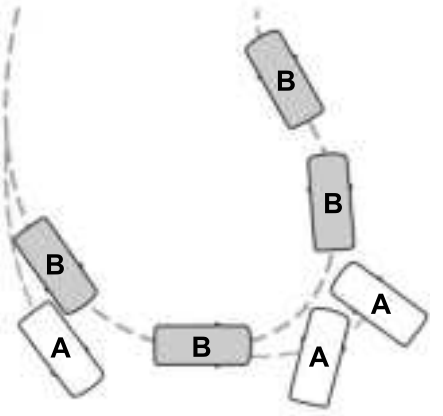
Roll stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

Curve Control

Curve control enhances your vehicle's ability to follow the road when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. Curve control operates by reducing engine power and, if necessary, applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually.

Traction Control

Traction control enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **How Does Traction Control Work** (page 226).



A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.

B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

Stability Control turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

You can switch the stability control off by pressing and holding the stability and traction control button off for 5-15 seconds, or you can press the button again to switch the system on.

Shifting the transmission into reverse (R) will disable the system.

You can switch the traction control system off or on independently. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 226).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Stability Control and Traction Control with Roll Stability Control

	Stability Control OFF Light	Roll Stability Control[3]	Electronic Stability Control[3]	Traction Control System[3]
Default at start-up	Illuminated during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled[3]	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	Illuminated	Enabled	Enabled[3]	Disabled[1]
Button pressed and held for 5 - 15 seconds	Illuminated	Enabled	Disabled[2]	Disabled[1]
Button not pressed and transfer case is switched to 4x4 Low or put into Rock Crawl Mode	Illuminated	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled[1]

[1] The Traction Control system can still be enabled but with tighter or looser thresholds.
[2] When you press and hold the button, a progress bar will display to show the button hold time progress.
[3] Functions can vary depending on what selectable drive mode the vehicle is currently in.

STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on. You can switch off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **How Does Traction Control Work** (page 226).

STABILITY CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

STABILITY CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Service AdvanceTrac	Displayed when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
AdvanceTrac Off On	The traction control has been disabled or enabled by the driver

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS HILL DESCENT CONTROL

Hill descent control allows the driver to set and maintain vehicle speed while descending steep slopes in various surface conditions.

HOW DOES HILL DESCENT CONTROL WORK

When hill descent control is active, it functions up to speeds of 36 km/h (22 mph). When the vehicle speed exceeds 36 km/h (22 mph), the system remains on but inactive.

If the vehicle speed stays below 68 km/h (42 mph), hill descent control remains on but inactive. Under this condition, when the vehicle speed goes below 36 km/h (22 mph), the system becomes active again and resumes maintaining vehicle speeds once the driver has selected a speed.

If the vehicle speed goes above 68 km/h (42 mph) hill descent control will be powered on and will not resume without the driver reactivating the system.

HILL DESCENT CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The system does not control speed in low traction conditions or extremely steep slopes. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Hill descent control cannot control descent in all surface conditions and circumstances, such as ice or extremely steep grades. Hill descent control is a driver assist system and cannot substitute for good judgment by the driver. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, crash or serious injury.

WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.

SWITCHING HILL DESCENT CONTROL ON AND OFF

Press the button on the instrument panel or on the off-road screen (if so equipped). A light illuminates, a message is displayed and a tone sounds when the system is active.

SETTING THE HILL DESCENT SPEED

To increase or decrease the descent speed, press the accelerator or brake pedal, or use the SET **+** and SET **-** buttons on the steering wheel. Once you reach the preferred speed remove your feet from the pedals.

Note: *Increasing and decreasing the set speed can only be done in small increments.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

HILL DESCENT CONTROL INDICATOR

Illuminates when you switch hill descent control on.

HILL DESCENT CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

HILL DESCENT CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
For Hill Descent Reduce Speed XX MPH/km/h or Less	Your vehicle speed requirement for off-road mode entry has not been met.
For hill descent select gear	You need to select a transmission gear for hill descent mode.
Hill descent control Driver resume control	Hill descent control mode is deactivated and you must resume control.
Hill Descent Control Malfunction	A hill descent system fault is present.
Hill Descent Control Off System Cooling	The hill descent system is cooling due to overuse.
Hill Descent Control not available with Cruise Control active	The hill descent system cannot activate while Cruise Control is actively controlling speed.

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

The electric power steering system assists the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems.

If your vehicle loses electrical power or detects a concern when you are driving the system switches off and you retain normal steering function. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

Note: *There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

STEERING – WARNING INDICATORS

The electric power steering system indicator illuminates if the system detects a fault during the continuous diagnostic checks.

Note: *If a red warning message displays, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Steering malfunction Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering assist malfunction Service required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	The steering system has detected a condition that could prevent you from starting your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

STEERING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does it seem that the steering is wandering or pulling?

Check your vehicle for an improperly inflated or uneven tire, loose or worn suspension or steering components, or improper vehicle alignment.

The system is functioning properly and the components have been checked, why is the steering system continuing to pull or wander?

A high crown in the road or crosswinds could make the steering system feel like it is wandering or pulling.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

Note: *Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.*

Note: *Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts, for example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.*

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: *When using a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the parking aids off. See* ***MyKey™*** *(page 60).*

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF

Using the Parking Aid Button (If Equipped)

Press the parking aid button or use the menu to turn the system on and off.

Using Park Aid Prompt

The system can be turned off using the pop-up message that appears on the instrument cluster when you are in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

When using a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the rear parking aid off.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (71 in) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS

The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

Note: *When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.*

FRONT PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects when your vehicle is moving at a low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle and provides an audible warning, for example another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) and obstacles are detected inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS

The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

SIDE PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE SIDE PARKING AID

The front and rear outermost parking aid sensors map objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle.

SIDE PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The sensor coverage is up to 60 cm (24 in) from the sides of your vehicle.

The side parking aid may not function if:

- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.
- Your vehicle is in park (P).
- The steering wheel angle information is not available. You must drive at least 150 m (492 ft) above 30 km/h (19 mph) to reset the steering wheel angle information.

Note: *If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.*

To reinitialize the system, drive the length of your vehicle.

The side parking aid does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at a low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear parking aid sensor.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, obstacles are detected within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always present in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the side sensing system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving slowly and there is a front or rear parking aid obstacle detected, and the side obstacle is within 60 cm (24 in) from the side of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off.

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear, the side sensing system provides audible and visual warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, obstacles are detected within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

LOCATING THE SIDE PARKING AID SENSORS

The side parking sensors are located in the sides of the front and rear bumpers.

SIDE PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

When the side parking aid detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

PARKING AID INDICATORS

The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are grey.

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R). When you stop your vehicle, visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the parking aids are not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the touchscreen.

Note: *When the front or rear park aid presents a fault message, the side parking aid also disables.*

Message	Action
Check front Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check rear Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.

WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R).

To access the rear view camera:

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***CONTROLS***.
3. Press ***Camera***.

REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Use caution when the tailgate is ajar. If the tailgate is ajar, the camera is out of position and the video image could be incorrect.

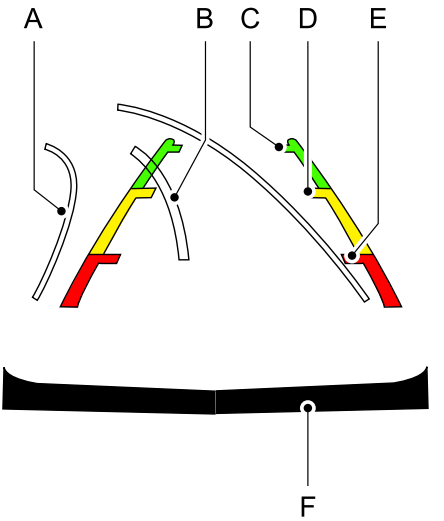
WARNING: Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.*

LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera is on the tailgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES



A	Active guide lines.
B	Centerline.
C	Fixed guide line: Green zone.
D	Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
E	Fixed guide line: Red zone.
F	Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Note: *Active guide lines and fixed guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *The centerline is only available if the active or fixed guide lines are on.*

Note: *Not all camera modes work properly without an auxiliary camera.*

REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT

WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Note: *Zooming in also engages park hold which applies the electric park brake when you shift to park (P). When you press the zoom button, the electronic park hold button illuminates on the touchscreen. See* ***Connecting a Trailer*** *(page 321).*

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.*

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Switch ***Rear View Camera Delay*** on or off.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until the vehicle speed reaches approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or you shift your vehicle into park (P).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA

The 360 degree camera system provides visibility around your vehicle in parking maneuvers such as:

- Centering in a parking space.
- Obstacles near your vehicle.
- Parallel parking.

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Helps you when parallel parking and centering in a parking space.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS

Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is on the tailgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

Front View Camera

The front view camera is in the front grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

Note: *For vehicles with selectable drive modes, the front view camera switches on when you are in mud/ruts, deep snow/sand, rock crawl or baja mode, or in four-wheel drive low.*

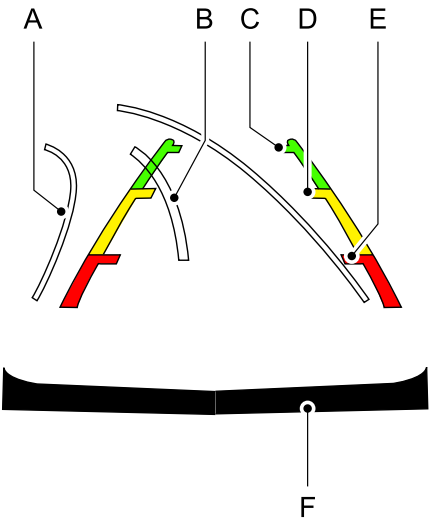
Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Side View Camera

The side view camera is on the outside mirror. It provides a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking or when backing up a trailer.

360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: *Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*



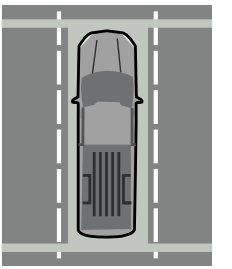
A Active guide lines.
B Centerline.
C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

360 DEGREE CAMERA SETTINGS

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF

To access the 360 degree camera shift into reverse (R) gear or access the camera via the touchscreen:

1. Access the vehicle drawer.
2. Press ***CONTROLS***.
3. Press ***Camera***.

Note: *The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R). Additional views are then accessible on the touchscreen.*

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), the front images display when the button is pressed. When in reverse (R), only the rear images display when the button is pressed.

Note: *Not all cameras are available.*

Note: *The 360 degree camera system turns off when your vehicle is in motion at low speed, except when in reverse (R).*

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW

Press to access the different camera views.

Front normal view provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.

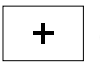
Front split view provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle.

Normal + 360 degree view contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.

Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.

Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.

The hitch view provides an image of the area around the tow hitch.


Zooms in on the image. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 321).

Zooms in on the 360 degree image. Also provides access to corner zoom views and front and rear offset views with tire guidelines depending on what gear and which drive mode you are in.

WHAT IS ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Assists you with parking in and out of parking spaces.

HOW DOES ACTIVE PARK ASSIST WORK - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Active park assist uses sensors to detect parking spaces. The system steers, accelerates, brakes and shifts gears as necessary to maneuver into or out of a parking space.

HOW DOES ACTIVE PARK ASSIST WORK - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Active park assist uses sensors to detect parking spaces. The system controls steering as required to maneuver into or out of a parking space.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Press the parking aid button, then press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen to bring up full screen notifications.

Press the soft keys on the touchscreen to switch between the parallel park in, perpendicular park in, or parallel park out parking modes.

Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, shift out of neutral (N).

Pausing Active Park Assist

To pause parking assistance at any time, release the parking aid button.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

If you open the passenger or rear doors, active park assist pauses.

To resume parking, press and hold the parking aid button again.

SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Press the parking aid button, and then press the active park assist icon on the touchsceen to bring up full screen notifications.

Press the soft keys on the touchscreen to switch between parallel park in, perpendicular park in or parallel park out parking modes.

Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time:

- Press the active park assist button during operation.
- Grab the steering wheel during operation.
- Drive above 35 km/h (22 mph) for a short period of time when searching for a parking space.
- Drive above 9 km/h (6 mph) during operation.
- Switch traction control off.

ENTERING A PARALLEL PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

1. Press the parking aid button.

Note: *The system detects other vehicles and curbs to find a parking space.*

2. Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

Note: *If you do not use the turn signal lever, the system searches for a parking space on the passenger side of your vehicle.*

4. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information and entertainment display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.*

5. Press and hold the brake pedal.
6. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
7. Press and hold the parking aid button.
8. Release the brake pedal to allow your vehicle to park.

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

Note: *When parallel parking between objects, the system parks closer to the object in front of your vehicle to allow easier access to the luggage compartment.*

Note: *When parking is complete, your vehicle shifts into park (P).*

ENTERING A PARALLEL PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

1. Press the active park assist button.
2. Select parallel park.

Note: *The system detects other vehicles and curbs to find a parking space.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

3. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

Note: *The system defaults to searching for a parking spot on the passenger side of your vehicle if you do not use the turn signal lever.*

4. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information and entertainment display when active park assist finds a parking space.*

5. Press and hold the brake pedal.
6. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
7. Use the accelerator and brake to control your vehicle's speed when parking. You are responsible for stopping your vehicle.
8. Active park assist is a multi-step process and requires you to shift the transmission multiple times. Follow the onscreen instructions until parking is complete.

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

Note: *When parallel parking between objects, the system will park closer to the object in front of your vehicle to allow easier access to the luggage compartment.*

ENTERING A PERPENDICULAR PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

1. Press the parking aid button.

Note: *Active park assist does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.*

2. Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Select perpendicular parking.
4. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

Note: *If you do not use the turn signal lever, the system searches for a parking space on the passenger side of your vehicle.*

5. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and perpendicular to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information and entertainment display when active park assist finds a parking space.*

6. Press and hold the brake pedal.
7. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
8. Press and hold the parking aid button.
9. Release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to park.

Note: *Active park assist backs your vehicle into parking spaces.*

Note: *Active park assist aligns the front end of your vehicle with the lane side of the object next to it.*

Note: *When the system detects only one object, it allows enough distance to open the door on either side.*

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

Note: *When parking is complete, your vehicle shifts into park (P).*

ENTERING A PERPENDICULAR PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

1. Press the active park assist button.
2. Select perpendicular parking.

Note: *Active park assist does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.*

Note: *Active park assist backs your vehicle into parking spaces.*

3. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

Note: *The system defaults to searching for a parking spot on the passenger side of your vehicle if you do not use the turn signal lever.*

4. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and perpendicular to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information and entertainment display when active park assist finds a parking space.*

5. Press and hold the brake pedal.
6. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
7. Use the accelerator and brake to control your vehicle's speed when parking. You are responsible for stopping your vehicle.
8. Active park assist is a multi-step process and requires you to shift the transmission multiple times. Follow the onscreen instructions until parking is complete.

Note: *Active park assist aligns the front-end of your vehicle with the lane side of the object next to it.*

Note: *When only one object is detected, the system allows enough distance to open the door on either side.*

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

EXITING A PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Active park assist only assists leaving parallel parking spaces.

1. Press the parking aid button.
2. Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Select parallel park exit.
4. Use the turn signal to choose the direction to exit the parking space.
5. Press and hold the brake pedal.
6. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
7. Release the parking brake.
8. Press and hold the parking aid button.
9. Release the brake pedal to allow your vehicle to move.

Note: *After active park assist drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.*

10. Take control of your vehicle.

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

EXITING A PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Active park assist only assists leaving parallel parking spaces.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

1. Press the active park assist button.
2. Select parallel park exit.
3. Use the turn signal to choose the direction to exit the parking space.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal.
5. Release the steering wheel and shift into the instructed gear.
6. Release the parking brake.
7. Use the accelerator and brake to control your vehicle's speed when exiting the parking space. You are responsible for stopping your vehicle.
8. Active park assist is multi-step process and requires you to shift the transmission multiple times. Follow the onscreen instructions until operation is complete.

Note: *After active park assist drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.*

9. Take control of your vehicle.

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Active Park Fault	The system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does active park assist not operate correctly?

The system is unable to detect a vehicle, curb or object to park next to or in between. The system needs boundary objects to operate correctly.

Why does active park assist not search for a parking space?

You have switched traction control off.

Why does active park assist not search for a parking space?

The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

The sensors could be blocked. For example, snow, ice or large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.

Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

The sensors in the front or rear bumper could be damaged.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.

Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.

Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

The parking space is more than 1.5 m (5 ft) or less than 0.5 m (2 ft) away from your vehicle.

Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

Your vehicle's speed is greater than 35 km/h (22 mph) for parallel parking or greater than 30 km/h (19 mph) for perpendicular parking.

Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.

Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?

An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.

Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?

Vehicles or objects bordering the space could not be correctly parked.

Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?

Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.

Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?

The tires are not correctly installed or maintained. For example, using a spare tire, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.

Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?

A repair or alteration changed the detection capabilities.

Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?

A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.

Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?

The parking space length, or position of parked objects, changes after your vehicle passes the space.

Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?

The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into a cold outside temperature, or after leaving a car wash.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 15 mph in imperial units and 20 km/h in metric units.

SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

WARNING: Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to whichever is greater, the current vehicle speed, or 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units. If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode.

Switching Cruise Control Off

Press the button when the system is active or switch the ignition off.

Note: *When you switch cruise control off, the set speed clears.*

SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+ SET-

Press either the SET+ or SET- buttons to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The indicator changes color in the information display.*

Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press the SET+ button to increase the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the SET+ button to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

SET-

Press the SET- button to decrease the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the SET- button to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

Note: *If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CANCELING THE SET SPEED

Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Note: *The system remembers the set speed.*

Note: *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED

Press the button.

CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS

Illuminates when you switch the system on.

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Adaptive cruise control uses a radar sensor to adjust your vehicle speed to maintain a set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane.

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.

WARNING: The system does not control speed in low traction conditions or extremely steep slopes. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

WARNING: Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.

WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

When Following a Vehicle

WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Hilly Condition Usage

You should select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

Note: *An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again after the brakes cool.*

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Sensor Limitations

WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

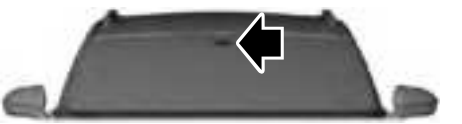
WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



The camera is mounted on the windshield behind the interior mirror.

The radar sensor is in the lower grille.

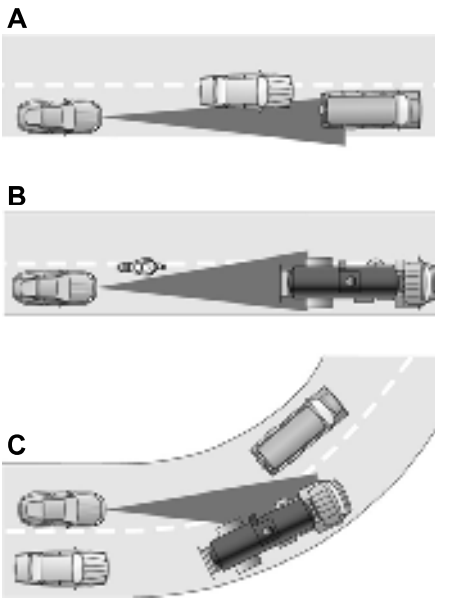
Note: *You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.*

Note: *Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.*

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 269).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Detection issues can occur:



A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.

B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.

C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield-mounted camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **Cruise Control** (page 254).

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On

Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to the current vehicle speed. If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for adaptive cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode.

Note: *The minimum set speed is 15 mph or 20 km/h.*

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off

Press the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: *When you switch the system off, the set speed clears.*

Automatic Cancellation or Deactivation

The system may cancel if:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.
- Your vehicle speed falls significantly below 15 mph or 20 km/h.

The system may turn off or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system or a related system.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

The system may cancel if:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

The system may cancel and set the parking brake if:

- You unbuckle the seatbelt and open the driver door after adaptive cruise control stops your vehicle.
- Adaptive cruise control holds your vehicle at a stop continuously for more than three minutes.

The system may deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system or a related system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+ SET-

Press the SET+ or SET- buttons to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: *When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.*

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed from a Complete Stop

SET+ SET-

Press the SET+ or SET- buttons while keeping the brake pedal fully depressed.

The set speed adjusts to 20 km/h when in metric units or 15 mph when in imperial units.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *The system activates from a complete stop only when it detects a lead vehicle in close proximity.*

Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press the SET+ button to increase the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the SET+ button to increase set speed in large increments. Release the button when the indicated set speed reaches the preferred speed.

SET-

Press the SET- button to decrease the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the SET- button to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the indicated set speed reaches the preferred speed.

You can also press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the SET+ or SET- button to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP

Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image.

Note: *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.*

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

Note: *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the information display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED

Press the button or tap the brake pedal.

The set speed does not erase.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED

Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

Resuming the Set Speed from a Complete Stop (If Equipped)

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than a few seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than a few seconds, an indicator and message displays.

Message	Action
Stopped	Cruise control does not resume automatically when this display is active.
Press button to resume	If the lead vehicle begins to move, you are prompted to press the resume button. Press and release the button or use the accelerator pedal to resume following the lead vehicle.
Auto-Resume	Displays when on a limited access highway after following a vehicle to a complete stop. In this situation, the vehicle resumes following the lead vehicle without a button press or pressing the accelerator pedal. The system can remain in auto-resume state for approximately 30 seconds, after which it no longer automatically resumes.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED

WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS

Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL

WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Press ***Cruise Control***.
5. Press ***Normal Cruise Control***.

The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic emergency braking remains active to maintain set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

LANE CENTERING

HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane you choose on highway roads.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Note: *The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering, operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.*

LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 256).

LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in your information and entertainment screen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 265).
- You have adaptive cruise control with stop and go enabled and set.
- The steering sensor detects your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings when driving on a straight road.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.

Note: *If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system will remain in standby until valid line markings are available.*

LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations** (page 257).

Lane centering may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane width is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too small.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.
- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When towing a trailer.

See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 264).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Note: *The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.*

SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

Press the button.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster. When the lane centering system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

Note: *The lane centering requirements must be met before you can enable the feature. See* ***Lane Centering Requirements*** *(page 264).*

Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Press ***Cruise Control***.
5. Switch Lane Centering on or off.

LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react appropriately to the warnings the adaptive cruise control with lane centering system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 265).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane line markings without detected steering activity.

Note: *The system could detect a light grip or light touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane line markings available, a tone sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

If your vehicle starts to slow down after system cancellation, you must take full control of the vehicle. To re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering after cancellation, press and release the resume button.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

Note: *If your vehicle slows down due to your inactivity twice within a key cycle, the system disables. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering will cancel:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button is switched off on the steering wheel.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

LANE CENTERING INDICATORS

Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.

Green status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber status with an audible tone, that then changes to gray status, indicates a system automatic cancellation.

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

HOW DOES INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Intelligent adaptive cruise control combines speed sign recognition and navigation map data with adaptive cruise control to adjust the cruise set speed to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system detects new speed signs, the set speed updates.

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. The intelligent adaptive cruise control system and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Traffic Sign Recognition** (page 307).

Note: *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.*

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

Note: *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

SWITCHING INTELLIGENT MODE ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Press ***Cruise Control***.
5. Press ***Adaptive cruise control***.
6. Press ***Speed Sign Recognition***.

ADJUSTING THE SET SPEED TOLERANCE

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Press ***Cruise Control***.
5. Press ***Adaptive cruise control***.
6. Press ***Speed Sign Recognition***.
7. Press ***Tolerance***.
8. Use the slider bar to adjust the allowable tolerance for the system.

Note: *You cannot set the tolerance more than 30 km/h (20 mph) above or below the recognized speed.*

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ALERTS

If you increase the set speed beyond the speed limit or speed limit plus a positive tolerance value, the set speed indicator flashes.

The warning does not occur if:

- You override the set speed using the accelerator pedal.
- The vehicle speed exceeds the set speed due to being on a downhill slope.

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS

E292667

A bracket appears around the set speed and the detected speed limit in the instrument cluster.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, some messages can appear different or not at all.*

Message	Action
Keep hands on steering wheel	You must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane centring assist not available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume control	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is about to cancel. You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press accelerator pedal to resume	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is in standby mode. When safe to do so, you can resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying pressure on the accelerator pedal. Alternatively, you can also re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Note: *Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.*

Message	Action
Intelligent cruise control Speed sign recognition not available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available. Check that the front windshield camera is not blocked. Navigation system information may not be available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: STOP AND GO

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Note: *The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.*

Message	Action
Adaptive cruise malfunction	A malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise from engaging.
Front sensor not aligned	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
Adaptive cruise not available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Adaptive cruise not available Sensor blocked See manual	You have a blocked radar because of poor radar visibility due to inclement weather or ice, mud, or water in front of the radar. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve this. Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.
Cruise control active Adaptive braking off	You have selected normal cruise control. The system does not brake or react to traffic.
Adaptive cruise Driver resume control	Displays when the adaptive cruise control is going to cancel and you must take control.
Adaptive cruise Speed too low to activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise control and there is no lead vehicle in range.

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings.

HOW DOES DRIVE MODE CONTROL WORK

Drive mode control adjusts your vehicle configuration for each mode you select.

Changing the drive mode adjusts the steering effort and feel of the steering system.

The stability and traction control assist your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high-performance driving.

Throttle control enhances the powertrain response, transmission controls become optimized with shift schedules, and four-wheel drive settings are optimized and tuned to each mode.

Changing the drive mode can engage or disengage the electronic locking differentials.

Changing the drive mode changes the four-wheel drive mode to the default setting for the selected drive mode.

Note: *The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, the drive mode system defaults to normal. When the system defaults to normal, the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.*

Note: *Your vehicle reverts to normal mode each time it is started. If you shut your vehicle off in a drive mode other than normal mode, at startup the instrument cluster screen displays a pop-up asking if you would like to return to your last used drive mode. If you select yes to the pop-up, your vehicle returns to the last selected drive mode and the default four-wheel driveline setting associated with that drive mode. If you select no, your vehicle remains in normal mode and the default four-wheel driveline setting associated with that drive mode. If you do not select yes or no the pop up message times out, your vehicle remains in normal mode, and the four-wheel driveline setting remains in its last used setting.*

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE

Rotate the drive mode control on the center console to select or change a drive mode.

Note: *Button icons vary depending on the vehicle.*

DRIVE MODES

ECO

For efficient driving. This mode helps deliver maximum fuel efficiency and helps to increase driving range.

Depending on your vehicle options, four-wheel drive auto (4A) or two-wheel drive high (2H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low (4L) is not selectable in eco mode.

The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h (25 mph).

MUD/RUTS

For off-road driving. This mode enhances vehicle performance to traverse muddy, rutted or uneven terrains.

Four-wheel drive high (4H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low (4L) is selectable in mud/ruts mode. Depending on your vehicle options, four-wheel drive auto (4A) or two-wheel drive high (2H) is not selectable in mud/ruts mode.

The rear electronic locking differential is engaged when in mud/ruts mode and is available at any speed in all selectable four-wheel drive modes.

Note: *Do not use this mode on dry, hard pavement. This could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection.*

NORMAL

For everyday driving. This mode is the perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. This is the default mode after each ignition cycle, the driveline settings remain the same prior to the ignition cycle.

Depending on your vehicle options, four-wheel drive auto (4A) or two-wheel drive high (2H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. All four-wheel drive modes are selectable when in normal mode.

The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h (25 mph).

Note: *The rear electronic locking differential is available at any speed when in four-wheel drive low (4L).*

SAND

For off-road driving on soft, dry sand or deep snow. This mode may help get your vehicle unstuck from deep snow or sand.

Four-wheel drive high (4H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low (4L) is selectable in sand mode. Depending on your vehicle options, four-wheel drive auto (4A) or two-wheel drive high (2H) is not selectable in sand mode.

The rear electronic locking differential is engaged when in sand mode and is available at any speed in all selectable four-wheel drive modes.

Note: *Do not use this mode on dry, hard pavement. This could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Note: *Sand mode is not intended for use on firm, slippery surfaces, such as paved roads covered with snow or ice. For slippery, firm surfaces use slippery mode.*

SLIPPERY

For less than ideal conditions such as snow or ice. This mode can be used for crossing terrain where a firm surface is covered with loose or slippery material. Slippery mode lowers throttle response and optimizes shifting for slippery surfaces.

Depending on your vehicle options, four-wheel drive auto (4A) or four-wheel drive high (4H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. When Four-wheel drive auto (4A) is the default, two-wheel drive high (2H) is not available.

The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h (25 mph).

Note: *The rear electronic locking differential is available at any speed when in four-wheel drive low (4L).*

Note: *Do not use this mode on hard pavement while in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L). This could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection.*

TOW/HAUL

For improved transmission operation when towing a trailer or a heavy load. This mode moves upshifts to higher engine speeds to reduce the frequency of transmission shifting. This mode also provides engine braking in all forward gears, which slows your vehicle and assists you in controlling your vehicle when descending a slope. The amount of downshift braking provided varies based on the amount you press the brake pedal.

Four-wheel drive auto (4A) is the default four-wheel drive mode when four-wheel drive auto (4A) is available, otherwise this mode does not default to a certain four-wheel drive mode and maintains the previous selection. All four-wheel drive modes are selectable when in tow/haul.

The system tunes the steering to enhance driving comfort when towing or carrying heavy loads.

The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h (25 mph).

Note: *The rear electronic locking differential is available at any speed when in four-wheel drive low (4L).*

HOW DOES THE SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF

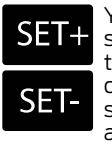
Press to switch the system on.

The system activates with the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

Press with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed. Speed limitation activates and the symbol in the instrument cluster appears green.

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Press to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The symbol in the instrument cluster appears grey.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Press again to resume the limiter. The symbol in the instrument cluster appears green.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator to temporarily turn the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

It illuminates in the instrument cluster when the system is standby or active.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

If you accidently exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator flashes and an audible warning tone sounds.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator flashes.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the traffic sign recognition system.

HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

Intelligent speed limiter uses data from the traffic sign recognition system to set a maximum speed. For example, if the traffic sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h (50 mph).

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *The system does not limit your vehicle's speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF

LIM

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the detected speed limit or, if no speed limit is detected the current speed of your vehicle is set. Press again to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+

SET-

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster.

Note: *The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.*

Note: *If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.*

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+

SET-

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

ADJUSTING THE SPEED LIMIT TOLERANCE

1. Access the feature drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Press ***Speed Limit Assist***.
5. Switch ***Intelligent Speed Limiter*** on.
6. Use the slider bar to adjust the allowable tolerance for the system.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Press to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The symbol in instrument cluster display appears grey.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Press to resume the limiter. The system sets the speed limit to the detected maximum speed limit when it resumes. The symbol in the instrument cluster display appears blue.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily turn the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

It illuminates in the instrument cluster when the system is in standby or active.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning appears in the instrument cluster and a tone sounds if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle's speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than your vehicle's current speed. A tone sounds when your vehicle speed remains above the speed limit for 30 seconds.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

If the traffic sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, 20–187 km/h (12–116 mph), a single warning tone sounds and the system switches to standby mode.

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and the manual speed limiter using the information and entertainment display.

1. Access the feature drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Press ***Speed Limit Assist***.
5. Switch ***Intelligent Speed Limiter*** off.

Note: *If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.*

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does a warning appear in the instrument cluster display?

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system alerts you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The lane keeping system uses a forward looking camera mounted on the windshield to monitor vehicle movement within the travel lane.

When the camera detects a drift out of the travel lane, the lane keeping system alerts the driver by vibrating the steering wheel, or aids the driver by providing a small steering input to move the vehicle back into the travel lane.

The driver can select one of three modes:

- Alert (If Equipped)
- Aid
- Alert + Aid

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The lane keeping system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than 64 km/h (40 mph).

The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking.

Note: *When you select Aid or Alert and Aid mode and the system detects no steering activity for a short period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

The lane keeping system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane keeping system does not detect at least one lane marking.
- You switch the turn signal on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 64 km/h (40 mph).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- The lane is too narrow.
- Something is obscuring the camera or it is unable to detect the lane markings due to environment, traffic or vehicle conditions.
- Entering or exiting a tight curve when driving at high speeds.

The lane keeping system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF

To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button again.

Note: *When switching the system on or off a message appears in the information and entertainment display to show the status.*

Note: *The system stores the on or off setting until manually changed, unless it detects a MyKey™. If the system detects a MyKey™, it defaults to the last setting for that MyKey™.*

Note: *If the system detects a MyKey™, pressing the button does not affect the on or off status of the system. You can only change the mode and intensity settings.*

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

The lane keeping system has different settings that you can view or adjust using the information display.

- Alert (If Equipped)
- Aid
- Alert and Aid

The system permanently stores the last known selection for each setting.

To change the lane keeping system mode, access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen:

1. Press ***SETTINGS***.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Lane-Keeping System***.
4. Press ***Lane-Keeping Mode***.
5. Select a setting.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.

3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Press ***Lane-Keeping System***.
5. Press ***Lane-Keeping Intensity***.
6. Select a setting.

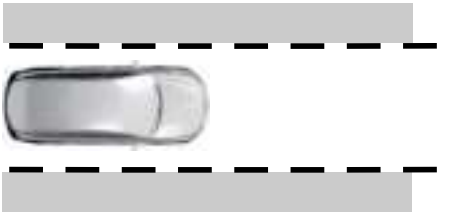
Note: *This setting is not available in all modes.*

ALERT MODE

WHAT IS ALERT MODE

Alert mode vibrates the steering wheel when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES ALERT MODE WORK



When in alert mode, the lane keeping system alerts you by vibrating the steering wheel. The intensity of the vibration is set through the lane keeping system menu.

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL VIBRATION INTENSITY

To change the steering wheel vibration intensity, use the touchscreen:

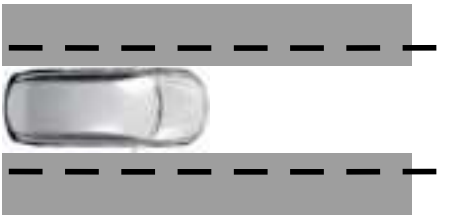
1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Lane-Keeping System***.
4. Press ***Lane-Keeping Intensity***.
5. Select an intensity setting.

AID MODE

WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move the vehicle towards the center of the lane.

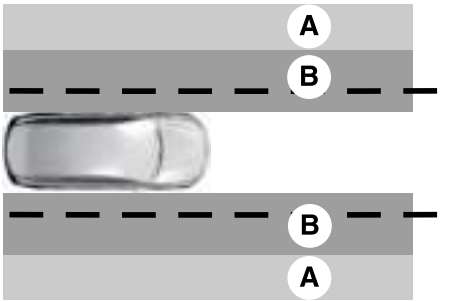
ALERT AND AID MODE

WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode uses multiple features to keep you in your lane. The system first provides a small steering input to bring your vehicle back towards the center of the lane. If your vehicle moves too far out of the center of the lane the system alerts you with vibration in the steering wheel.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK



A Alert.
B Aid.

The lane keeping system detects a lane departure and provides aid when the vehicles enters **B** and applies the additional alert warning if **A** is entered.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS

If you switch the lane keeping system on, a graphic with lane markings appears in the information display.

When you switch the system off, the lane marking graphics do not display.

Note: *The overhead vehicle graphic may still display if adaptive cruise control is enabled.*

While the lane keeping system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status.

Gray	Green	Yellow	Red
Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system.

It may help you identify adjacent vehicles during a lane change.

Blind spot assist provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance to help during lane changes.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK

Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of direction indicators and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- The system does not detect lane markings.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- You connect a trailer to a vehicle without blind spot assist with trailer coverage.

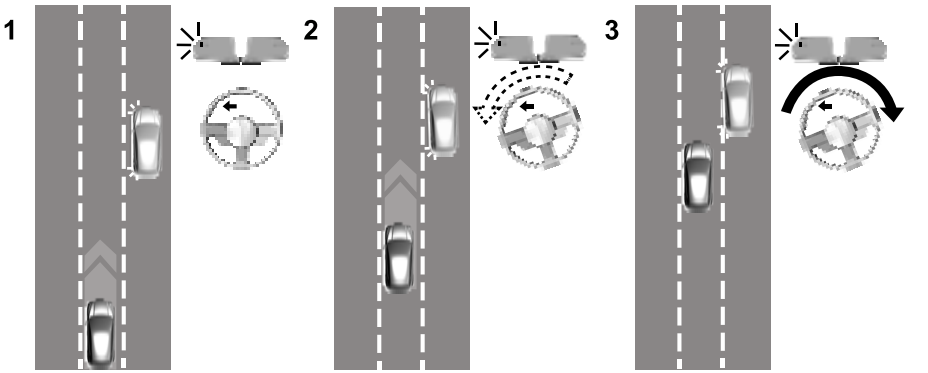
Note: *Bike, cargo racks and attaching a trailer could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike, cargo rack or when not using our trailer wiring.*

Blind spot assist may have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS



The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 289).

Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle and you do not have blind spot assist with trailer coverage.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Brake Module Malfunction	Lost communication with the trailer module. Blind Spot Assist is suppressed until the failure is fixed.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Message	Details
Trailer lighting module malfunction See manual	Lost communication with the trailer module. Blind Spot Assist is suppressed until the failure is fixed.
Front camera malfunction Service required	Front Camera Fault. Blind Spot Assist is suppressed until the failure is fixed.

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 289).

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system.

It may help you identify adjacent vehicles during a lane change.

Blind spot assist provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance to help during lane changes.

When attaching a trailer, ensure you have properly set up the trailer coverage settings. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 291).

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If a supported trailer is connected, the function is reduced to only detecting vehicles on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 291).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of direction indicators and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- The system does not detect lane markings.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- You have not configured the attached trailer correctly in the trailer tow menus or you attached an unsupported trailer. The system only supports certain trailer shapes and dimensions.

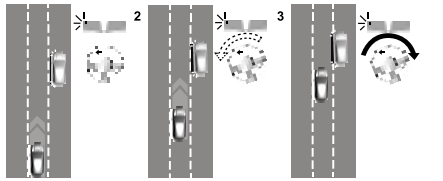
Note: *Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if any of the above limitations are present.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Blind spot assist may have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS



The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 289).

Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle with the blind spot information system switched off or you have not configured the trailer.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if you have blocked blind spot information system sensors.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Brake Module Malfunction	Lost communication with the trailer module. Blind Spot Assist is suppressed until the failure is fixed.
Trailer lighting module malfunction See manual	Lost communication with the trailer module. Blind Spot Assist is suppressed until the failure is fixed.
Front camera malfunction Service required	Front Camera Fault. Blind Spot Assist is suppressed until the failure is fixed.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Your vehicle speed is less than 65 km/h (40 mph).
The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
A quick intentional lane change has occurred.
Your vehicle stays too close to the lane markings for an extended interval of time.
Driving at high speeds in curves.
The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
Ambiguous lane markings, for example, in construction zones.
Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
Sudden offset in lane markings.
ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings, or vice versa.
There is standing water on the road.
Faint lane markings, for example, partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.
Lane width is too narrow or too wide.
You have not calibrated the camera after a windshield replacement.
Driving on tight or on uneven roads.

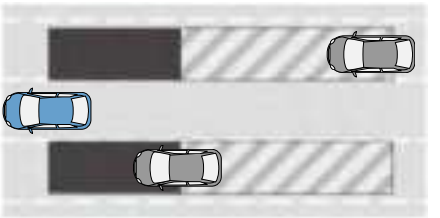
Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid, or Aid + Alert mode?
High cross winds are present.
There is a large road crown.
Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.
Heavy, uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.
You changed the tires or modified the suspension.

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

Blind spot information system uses sensors on both sides of your vehicle, detecting rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Note: *Blind spot information system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It does not detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructure.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Blind spot information system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

Note: *For vehicles without blind spot information system with trailer coverage, aftermarket trailer tow modules or tow bars may interfere with the system. In this situation it is recommended that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by the manufacturer, the system automatically turns off when you attach a trailer.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

Blind spot information system turns on when all the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Note: *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

Blind spot information system turns on when all the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: *The system does not operate in reverse (R).*

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

To switch blind spot information system on or off, use the touchscreen:

1. Access the vehicle drawer.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Switch ***BLIS*** on or off.

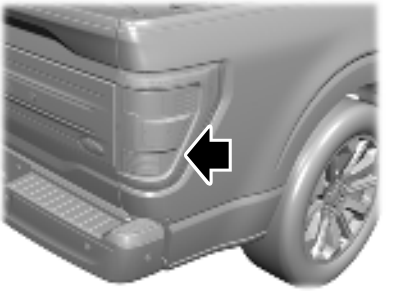
Note: *Some vehicles may not have the ability to switch the feature on or off.*

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are inside the brake lamp on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

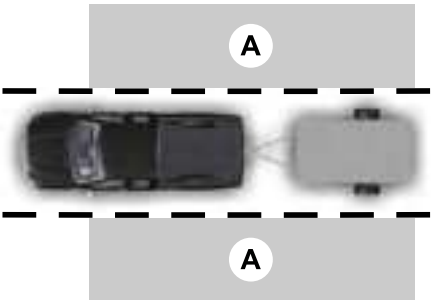
Note: *Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.*

Note: *Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.*

If the sensors become blocked, a message appears in the instrument cluster display. See **Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages** (page 293). The alert indicators illuminate but the system does not alert you.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE



Blind spot information system detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. When you attach a trailer and have set up a trailer, the blind spot information system with trailer tow becomes active when driving forward above 10 km/h (6 mph).

You can set up the trailer length, select a trailer or switch blind spot information system with trailer tow off.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Trailer coverage only supports conventional trailers. The system turns off if you select a fifth wheel or gooseneck trailer type.

Make sure the trailer width is less than or equal to 2.5 m (8.2 ft) and the length is less than 10.1 m (33 ft). If you input values higher, the system turns off.

Some trailers could cause a slight change in system performance:

- Large box trailers could cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructures or near parked cars. A false alert could also occur while making a 90-degree turn.
- Trailers that have a width greater than 2.5 m (8.2 ft) at the front and have a total length greater than 6 m (20 ft) could cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speeds.
- Box trailers that have a width greater than 2.5 m (8.2 ft) at the front could cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clamshell or V-nose box trailers with a width greater than 2.5 m (8.2 ft) at the front could cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

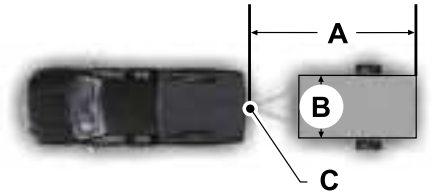
3. Press ***BLIS***.

Note: *Some vehicles may not have the ability to switch the feature on or off.*

When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system turns off and a message appears when a trailer is connected, but not set up or selected.*

SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH



A Trailer length.
B Trailer width.
C Trailer hitch ball.

You can set up a trailer to work with the blind spot information system through the touchscreen. When setting up a trailer, a sequence of screens appear asking for trailer information.

1. Select the type of trailer; conventional, fifth wheel or gooseneck.

Note: *The system only supports conventional trailers.*

2. Do you want to set up blind spot with trailer screen? No, the system turns off. Yes, you are taken to the next screen.
3. Is the width less than or equal to 2.6 m (9 ft)and the length less than or equal to 10.1 m (33 ft)? No, the system turns off. Yes, you are taken to the next screen.
4. Trailer width measurement. Measure the width at the front of the trailer. The maximum width the system can support is 2.6 m (8.5 ft).

Note: *Trailer width is not measured at the widest point of the trailer.*

Note: *You do not need to enter an exact trailer width measurement. You only need to confirm the width of the trailer is less than or equal to 2.6 m (9 ft).*

5. Trailer length measurement. The trailer length is the distance between the trailer hitch ball and the rear of the trailer. The maximum length the system can support is 10.1 m (33 ft).
6. Enter the length of trailer. The default setting is 7.6 m (25 ft). Toggling the menu buttons up or down increases or decreases the measurement in 0.3 m (1 ft) increments. Select a length that is equal to or within 1 m (3 ft) of the actual measured length. For example, if the actual measured length is 7.5 m (25 ft), toggle the length in the menu to 8.2 m (27 ft). The system setup saves when you enter the trailer length.

Note: *If the trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with electrical lighting, enter a length of 1 m (3 ft). Cross traffic alert remains on for trailers with a length of 1 m (3 ft) or less.*

Note: *The system requires proper measurement and measure entry to function properly.*

SELECTING A TRAILER

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the trailer set up menu appears in the touchscreen. This menu allows you to set up a new trailer or choose from a previously set up trailer. A warning message appears and the system turns off if you do not choose or add a new trailer.

Note: *The warning message may not appear until your vehicle reaches 35 km/h (22 mph).*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS

If the system detects a fault, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

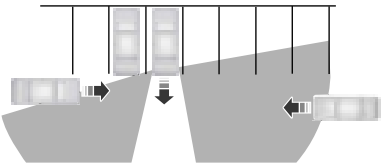
Message	Action
BLIS malfunction	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	Something is blocking the sensors. Clean the sensors.
BLIS deactivated Trailer attached	The system automatically turns off and displays this message when you connect a trailer to the vehicle that does not have a trailer blind spot system or when you switch the trailer blind spot system off through the touchscreen.

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

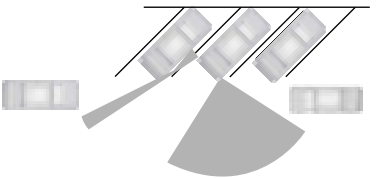
The system alerts you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

Cross traffic alert detects vehicles that approach at a speed between 6–60 km/h (4–37 mph). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed.



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

Note: *Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.*

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- Something is blocking the sensors.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 6 km/h (4 mph) or greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Cross Traffic Alert Limitations with a Trailer Attached

The system remains on when you attach a trailer in vehicles with blind spot information system with trailer tow under the following conditions:

- You connect a trailer.
- The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m (3 ft).
- You set the trailer length to 1 m (3 ft) in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

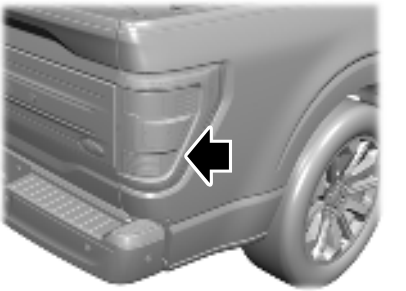
SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

To switch cross traffic alert on or off use the touchscreen.

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Switch ***Cross Traffic Alert*** on or off.

Note: *The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on. To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.*

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are inside the brake lamp on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.*

If something is blocking the sensors, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R).

Note: *Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.*

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS

When the cross traffic alert detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, a warning lamp illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the instrument cluster display to show which side the vehicle is approaching from.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

If the system malfunctions, a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *If arrows do not display, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.*

Note: *In some conditions, the system could alert you, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.*

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – WARNING LAMPS

If the system malfunctions, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Cross traffic alert	Displays instead of indication arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	Indicates blocked cross traffic alert system sensors. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects and warns of approaching hazards in the roadway. If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system provides multiple levels of assistance to help avoid a collision.

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system warns the driver of potential hazards by providing three levels of assistance.

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching potential hazards the system provides the following levels of functionality:

1. Alert.
2. Brake Support.
3. Automatic Emergency Braking.

Alert: When active, a flashing visual warning appears and an audible warning tone sounds.

Brake Support: The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

Automatic Emergency Braking: Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent.

Note: *If you perceive the pre-collision assist alerts as being too frequent or disturbing, then you can reduce the alert sensitivity. Setting the low sensitivity would result in fewer and later warnings of a potential forward collision. The manufacturer recommends using the high sensitivity setting where possible.*

Note: *Automatic emergency braking performance is not affected by the sensitivity setting.*

Each system has various levels of detection capabilities. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations** (page 298).

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system does not detect vehicles moving in a different direction or animals. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WARNING: The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Take additional care if your vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer. These conditions could result in reduced performance of this system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.

WARNING: System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Pre-collision assist depends on the detection ability of its camera and sensors. Any obstructions or damage to these areas can limit detection or prevent the system from functioning. See **Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors** (page 299).

The system is active at 5 km/h (3 mph) and above.

Note: *The Pre-Collision Assist system disables when you select **4X4 LOW** or when you manually disable AdvanceTrac™.*

Note: *Brake support and automatic emergency braking are active at speeds up to 130 km/h (80 mph). If your vehicle has a radar sensor included with adaptive cruise control, then brake support and automatic emergency braking are active up to the maximum speed of the vehicle.*

Pedestrian Detection Limitations

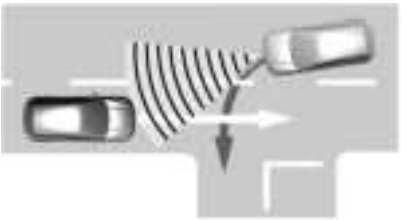
Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).

Pedestrian detection operates optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. System performance may reduce in situations where pedestrians are running, partly obscured, have a complex background, or cannot be distinguished from a group.

Intersection Assist (If Equipped)

If your vehicle comes with the radar sensor included in the adaptive cruise control, pre-collision assist may operate to detect oncoming vehicles as you traverse intersections. Detection of vehicles driving in an oncoming direction is active if your vehicle is driving at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM



SWITCHING PRE-COLLISION ASSIST ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off, use the touchscreen:

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Pre-Collision Assist***.
4. Switch the feature on or off.

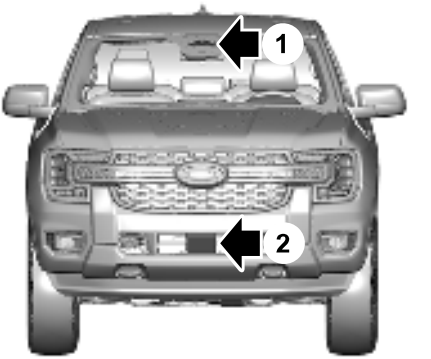
Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings

You can adjust the following settings by using the touchscreen controls in the pre-collision assist menu:

- Change alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings.
- If required, switch automatic emergency braking on or off.
- If required, switch the entire pre-collision assist feature on or off.

Note: *Automatic emergency braking switches on every time you switch the ignition on.*

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS



1. Camera.
2. Radar sensor (if equipped).

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the instrument cluster, something is obstructing the radar signals or camera images. The radar sensor is located behind the fascia cover in the center of the lower grille. If a sensor or camera is blocked, the system may not function, or performance may reduce. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages** (page 303).

Note: *Proper system operation requires the camera have a clear view of the road. Have any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view repaired.*

Note: *If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle has a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone could change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Note: *If your vehicle detects excessive heat at the camera or a potential misalignment condition, a message could display in the instrument cluster indicating the sensor is temporarily unavailable. When operational conditions are correct, the message deactivates. For example, when the ambient temperature around the sensor decreases or the sensor recalibrates successfully.*

DISTANCE INDICATION

WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays the gap between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.

Note: *The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.*

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h (62 mph).	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 25 m (82 ft).	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	17–25 m (56–82 ft).	0.6-0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 17 m (56 ft).	Less than 0.6 seconds.

SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off:

1. Access the vehicle drawer.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Press ***Pre-Collision Assist***.
5. Switch ***Distance indication*** on or off.

DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

The indicator displays the time gap between your vehicle and vehicles traveling in the same direction ahead of you.

DISTANCE ALERT

WHAT IS DISTANCE ALERT

The system alerts you with a warning lamp if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

Note: *The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF DISTANCE ALERT

To adjust the sensitivity of the system, use the touchscreen:

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Pre-Collision Assist***.
4. Press ***Alert Sensitivity***.
5. Select a setting.

AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help reduce impact damage to avoid the crash completely.

Automatic emergency braking is only available up to certain speeds. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations** (page 298).

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off:

1. Access the vehicle drawer.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Press ***Pre-Collision Assist***.
5. Press ***Automatic Emergency Braking***.
6. Switch the feature on or off.

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

Note: *Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you.* *See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 297).*

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: *Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.*

Note: *Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.*

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off:

1. Access the vehicle drawer on your vehicle's touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Press ***Pre-Collision Assist***.
5. Switch ***Evasive Steering*** on or off.

Note: *If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.*

Note: *Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on every time you switch the power on.*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS

A telltale illuminates in the cluster to indicate if the system is disabled or unavailable.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Pre-collision assist not available	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Camera Troubleshooting

The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.

Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.

The windshield in front of the camera is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display.

Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

Radar Troubleshooting (If Equipped)

The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed.

Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.

The surface of the radar in the grille is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display.

Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.

Heavy rain, spray or fog is interfering with the radar signals.

The pre-collision assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

Swirling water or snow or ice on the surface of the road is interfering with the radar signals.

The pre-collision assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

Radar is out of alignment due to a front-end impact.

Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

Driver alert alerts you if it determines that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

Driver alert uses a front camera sensor located behind the interior mirror to calculate your alertness level based on your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by Ford.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *If something is blocking the camera or damaged the windshield, Driver Alert may not function.*

DRIVER ALERT LIMITATIONS

Driver alert may not function correctly if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- Your vehicle's speed is less than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF (IF EQUIPPED)

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Switch ***Driver Alert*** on or off.

Note: *The system remembers your last setting when you start your vehicle.*

Resetting Driver Alert

You can reset the system by switching the ignition off and on or opening and closing the driver door when your vehicle is stopped.

DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS

System Warnings

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

Note: *The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).*

DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	Take a rest soon.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

Traffic sign recognition detects traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit and traffic conditions. Detected signs appear in the instrument cluster display.

HOW DOES TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Traffic sign recognition uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect traffic signs.

If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

Note: *Always replace headlamp bulbs and other bulbs with parts that meet the specifications for your vehicle. Non-standard parts could reduce system performance.*

Note: *If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by Ford, the system may not correctly function.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

Traffic sign recognition may not operate correctly due to the following:

- Outdated map data.
- Incorrect recognition of traffic signs by the sensor of signs on parallel roads or exit ramps.
- Missed recognition of faded, dirty or distorted signs.

Note: *The system may not detect all speed and traffic signs and may incorrectly read signs.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS

Traffic sign recognition can display two traffic signs together.

Note: *Sign indicator image may vary based on your vehicle's display type.*

SETTING THE TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED WARNING

To set the speed warning, use the touchscreen.

1. Access the vehicle drawer.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Press ***Speed Limit Assist***.
5. Switch the speed warning on or off.

SETTING THE TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED TOLERANCE

To set the tolerance of the speed warning, use the touchscreen.

1. Access the vehicle drawer.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
4. Press ***Speed Limit Assist***.
5. Press ***Tolerance***.
6. Use the slider bar to select the required level.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have the system checked as soon as possible.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the speed limit or traffic sign change without any sign on the road?

The speed limit and traffic sign changes due to stored data in the map data.

Why does traffic sign recognition show a wrong sign?

The system shows a wrong sign due to incorrect and outdated map data or due to incorrect recognition of the signs by the camera.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS

Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

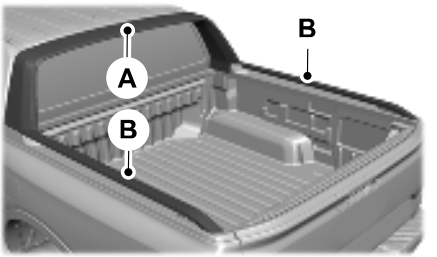
Note: *If your vehicle comes with bed rails, we recommend that you evenly distribute the load and do not exceed the total maximum load and maximum load capacity of 40 kg (90 lb).*

LOAD RETAINING FIXTURES AND CAPACITIES

Note: *Overloading the load retaining fixture could damage it.*

Note: *Make sure you properly balance and secure the cargo load. Failure to follow this can cause cargo instability and damage to the fixtures.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM



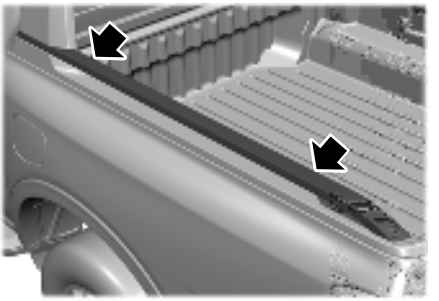
A Sports hoop.

B Box rails.

The box rails can be used to attach cross bars or secondary accessories. The maximum load on the box rails, including the cross bars or secondary accessories, is 40 kg (90 lb).

Note: *Do not sit or stand on the sports hoop.*

Box Rail Tie-Down Points (Double Cab)

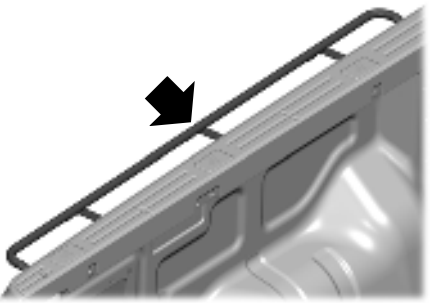


Use the lashing points towards the front and rear of the box rails.

Note: *Do not lash at the center point of the box rails.*

Note: *Maximum load per lashing point is 150 kg (330 lb).*

External Tie Down Rails (If Equipped)

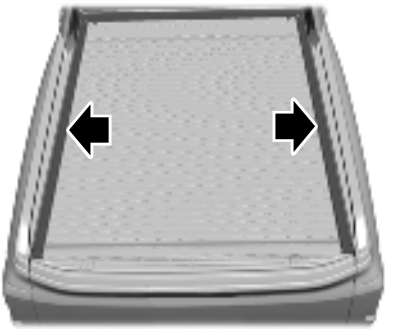


The external tie down rails can be used to secure loads. The maximum load is 150 kg (330 lb) per rail.

Load Rest (If Equipped)

Note: *Secure luggage or cargo placed on the load rest with the load rest stoppers.*

Power Roller Shutter Rails (If Equipped)



The roller shutter rails can be used to attach cross bars or secondary accessories. The maximum load on the roller shutter rails, including the cross bars or secondary accessories, is 30 kg (65 lb).

ROOF RACK

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum load rating of the load retaining fixtures. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Note: *If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

Place loads on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails or alternative load carrying Ford rooftop accessory. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

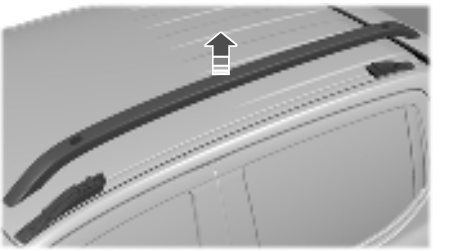
REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE ROOF RACK

Removing the Roof Rack

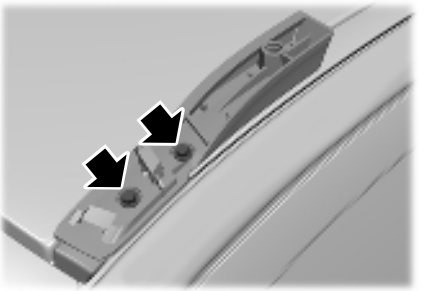
1. Remove the roof rack bolt covers by inserting two narrow trim removal tools simultaneously.

2. Using a Torx T40 tool, remove the front roof rack fasteners. Repeat the process for removing the rear roof rack fasteners.

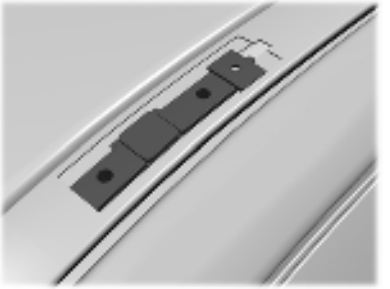
3. Loosen the roof rack by sliding the inner support brackets toward the center of the rail.



4. Remove the roof rack from the vehicle.



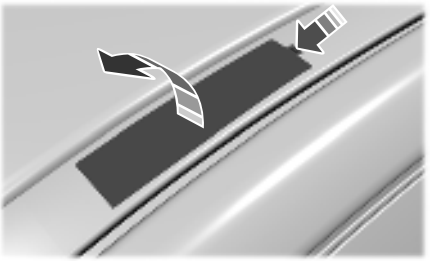
5. Remove the bolts securing the front and rear support assembly.



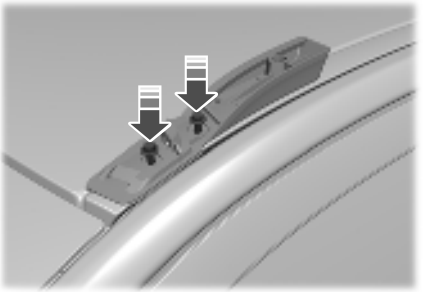
6. Remove the supports and gaskets from the vehicle to expose the accessory mounting plate.
7. Place the trim cover over the mounting plate.

Note: *The mounting plate trim cover needs to be purchased separately. The trim cover is installed when you remove the roof rack.*

Installing the Roof Rack



1. Using a trim removal tool, disengage the clip and remove the trim.
2. Store the trim cover components.



3. Place the roof rack support assembly over the mounting holes.
4. Hand start the front roof rack fasteners.
5. Using a M6 wrench, tighten the front roof rack fasteners. Torque bolts to 10.5 Nm (7.7 lb.ft).
6. Repeat the steps for the rear roof rack support assembly.

7. Insert sliding brackets into the front end of the roof rack.
8. Hold the bracket in place by placing your finger into the roof rack hole and align the roof rack to the support assembly.
9. Secure by sliding the bracket forward into the retention slot.
10. Repeat the steps for the rear of the roof rack.
11. Align the center of the bracket hole to the bolt hole in the support.

12. Install the supplied M8 Torx bolts using a Torx T40 tool. Torque the bolts to 16 Nm (11.8 lb.ft).

13. Install the roof rack fastener cover, ensuring it clicks into place.
14. Repeat steps 9 through 11 for the rear roof rack fastener.

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES

Maximum Recommended Load Amounts

Description	Maximum Recommended Load	
	With Moonroof	Without Moonroof
When in motion	40 kg (90 lb)	85 kg (187 lb)
When stationary	350 kg (772 lb)	350 kg (772 lb)

Description	Roof Rack system weights
Double Cab Wildtrak	5 kg (11 lb)
RAP Cab Wildtrak	3.2 kg (7 lb)

Note: *The maximum recommended load is based on the load being evenly distributed on the crossbars.*

Note: *Include the weight of the roof rack with any fitted accessories when calculating maximum payload. Read and follow manufacturer instructions when fitting rooftop accessories.*

PICKUP BED PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not allow people or animals in truck beds that have modifications, such as bed covers or slide-in campers, when the engine is running. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINTS

PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Do not use the load retaining fixtures for towing. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

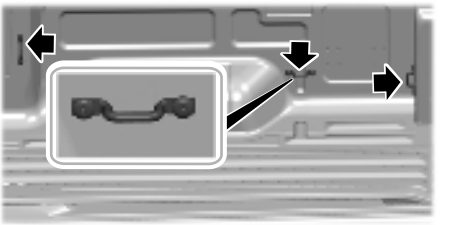
WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum load rating of the load retaining fixtures. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Check the load retaining fixtures for damage before using them. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

LOCATING THE PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINTS

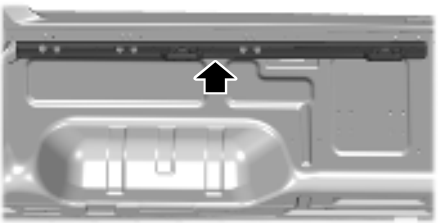
Pickup Bed Anchor Points

The pickup bed anchor points are in each corner of the pickup bed.

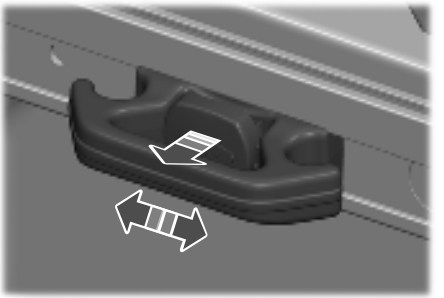


Adjustable Bed Rail (If Equipped)

Sliding cleat tie-downs are on each side of the pickup bed.



Adjusting the Sliding Cleat Tie-downs

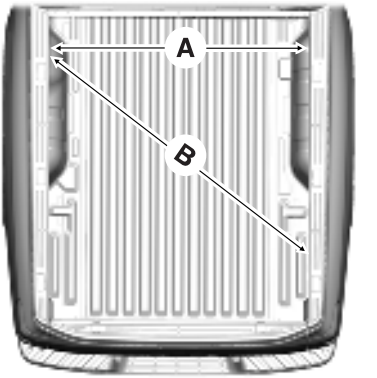


1. Pull the release button on the cleat to release the cleat.
2. Move the cleat to desired position.
3. Lock the cleat to the locking positions on the sliding rails. Locking positions can be identified as holes on the rails.

Note: *The release button returns to the lock position only when the cleat is locked correctly.*

Note: *Do not load the cleat unless it is properly locked onto the rail.*

PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINT LOAD CAPACITIES



A	B
Maximum force between directly opposed anchor points 125 kg (276 lb).	Maximum force between diagonally opposed anchor points 272 kg (600 lb).

Note: *You could damage the pickup bed walls if you overload the tie-downs.*

Note: *Make sure that you properly balance and secure the cargo load. Failure to do this can cause cargo instability and damage to the box.*

Note: *Do not secure cargo with tie downs connected from the tie-down brackets to the pickup box tie-downs. This could cause the tailgate to detach.*

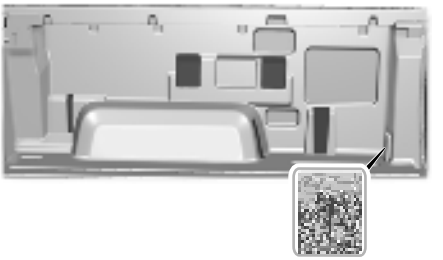
Adjustable Sliding Cleat Tie-Down Load Capacities

The sliding cleats can be used to secure loads. The maximum recommended load is 250 kg (551 lb) per cleat.

PICKUP BED SLOTS

LOCATING THE PICKUP BED SLOTS

Slots in the pickup bed provide location points for timber to support various loads.

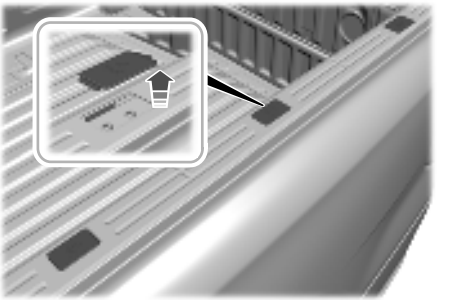


PICKUP BED ACCESS CAPS

WHAT ARE PICKUP BED ACCESS CAPS

The pickup bed has removable access caps that expose structural attachment points used to fit aftermarket accessories.

LOCATING THE PICKUP BED ACCESS CAPS



Access caps are located on the sides of the pickup bed. Remove the caps to access the attachment points.

Note: *Replace the access caps when the structural attachment points are no longer being used.*

ROLLER SHUTTER (IF EQUIPPED)

ROLLER SHUTTER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not allow people or animals in truck beds that have modifications, such as bed covers or slide-in campers, when the engine is running. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

Note: *To service the roller shutter, see an authorized dealer. See* ***Cleaning the Roller Shutter*** *(page 388).*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Note: *Secure the loads carried in the pickup bed.*

Note: *Roller shutter may not open or close when the seals are frozen.*

Note: *Make sure the roller shutter is free of any obstruction before you open or close it. For example, snow or ice.*

Note: *Water and dust could enter the pickup bed with the roller shutter closed.*

Note: *To prevent damage due to overheating, the system could become inoperable for a short period if you repeatedly operate the roller shutter in a short period of time.*

ROLLER SHUTTER LIMITATIONS

The roller shutter does not function when:

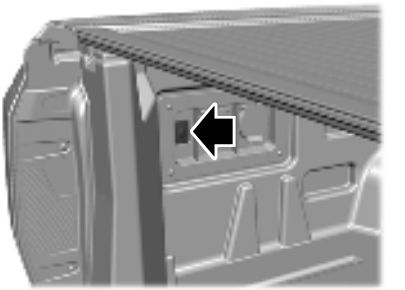
- The vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph).
- When the transmission selector is not in the park (P) position, on automatic transmission vehicles.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE ROLLER SHUTTER

With the Remote Control

Press the button twice within a few seconds.

From the Pickup Bed



Unlock your vehicle, then press the button mounted in the pickup bed to open or close the roller shutter.

One-Touch Open and Close

Press and release the power roller shutter button in the pickup bed. Press again to stop the roller shutter.

Resetting One-Touch

See **Resetting Roller Shutter Bounce-Back** (page 320).

From Inside Your Vehicle

Press the button on the instrument panel.

STOPPING THE ROLLER SHUTTER

- Press the power roller shutter button on the remote control twice within a few seconds. Wait a few seconds to perform another remote control operation to avoid functionality delays.
- Press the power roller shutter button on the instrument panel.
- Use the power roller shutter button in the pickup bed.

Note: *If you stop the roller shutter using any button, the direction of travel reverses on the next activation of the power roller shutter.*

WHAT IS ROLLER SHUTTER BOUNCE-BACK

The roller shutter stops automatically while opening and closing if it comes into contact with an object. It reverses some distance, allowing you to remove the trapped object.

Note: *If the roller shutter stops through bounce back, it continues in the same direction of travel when you press any of the power roller shutter buttons.*

OVERRIDING ROLLER SHUTTER BOUNCE-BACK

If the roller shutter is blocked with debris or seizes at low temperatures due to ice, the bounce back function prevents the roller shutter from closing or opening. You may temporarily override the bounce back function by following the below steps.

1. Press and hold the button on the instrument panel or in the pickup bed, for a minimum of three seconds.
2. To reverse the direction of travel of the roller shutter, release then press and hold the button continuously for a minimum of three seconds.
3. While holding the button, move the roller shutter cover to the desired position.
4. After releasing the button, the system returns the roller shutter to normal mode and the bounce back function reactivates.

Clean the roller shutter if it does not move after completing the steps. When the roller shutter is heavily iced, use a scraper to break the ice between the curtain and the seals to free the roller shutter.

Consult your authorized dealer for further assistance.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

RESETTING ROLLER SHUTTER BOUNCE-BACK

If the battery becomes discharged or disconnected from the vehicle, reset the roller shutter memory as follows.

1. Press and hold the button until the roller shutter reaches fully open or fully closed and continue pressing the button for at least four seconds.
2. Release the button.
3. Within ten seconds of releasing the button, press and hold the button until the roller shutter fully closes or opens, and continue to press the button for at least four seconds.
4. If the roller shutter does not open when you press the button, repeat the procedure.

Note: *The bounce back function deactivates until you reset the memory.*

Note: *You can only perform the resetting procedure using the button in the pickup bed or on the instrument panel.*

Note: *The roller shutter speed reduces to prevent risk of damage or injury until the memory resets.*

CONNECTING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS

Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.

See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.

Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer.

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

Account for the trailer coupler weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Do not exceed the load limits.

Note: *Your vehicle is designed to be used without a weight distributing hitch.*

TOW BALL

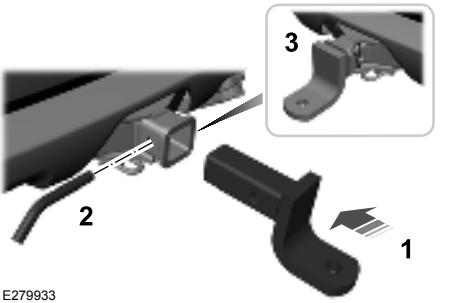
TOW BALL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

WARNING: Always place the tow ball arm in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile in a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

ATTACHING THE TOW BALL ARM

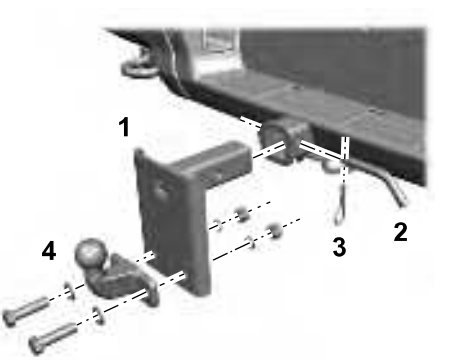
Type 1



E279933

1. Insert the tow ball arm into the tow bar.
2. Insert the pin.
3. Secure the pin with the clip.

Type 2



1. Insert the tow ball arm into the tow bar.
2. Insert the pin.
3. Secure the pin with the clip.
4. Tighten the bolts to 161 lb.ft (218 Nm).

Note: *Take special care when fitting the tow ball arm as the safety of the vehicle and trailer depends on this.*

Note: *Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.*

Note: *Your vehicle may not come with a tow ball assembly.*

Driving with a Trailer

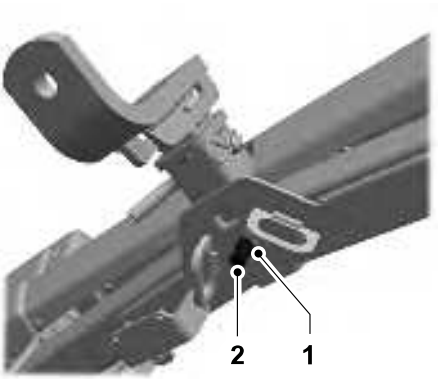
Note: *If your vehicle cannot meet any of the following conditions, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Never unlock the tow ball arm with the trailer attached.*

Before operating your vehicle:

- Confirm that the tow ball arm is correctly engaged and locked in place.
- Install the plug into its seat, if applicable.

Anti-Rattle Pinch Bolt Removal (If Equipped)



1. Loosen the pinch bolt locknut.
2. Remove the tow coupling anti-rattle pinch bolt.

Note: *When towing, remove the tow coupling anti-rattle pinch bolt from the tow bar.*

Note: *When not towing, replace the anti-rattle pinch bolt, and tighten the locknut. The tightening torque must not exceed 47 Nm (35 lb.ft).*

Driving Without a Trailer

Remove the tow ball arm from the vehicle and keep it securely fastened inside the luggage compartment.

Note: *Remove the tow ball arm from the vehicle when not in use.*

Note: *Remove adapters from the tow bar electrical socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the socket.*

Maintenance

- Keep the system clean.
- Regularly clean the tow bar electrical socket.
- Periodically lubricate the tow ball mechanism with resin-free grease or oil and the lock with graphite.

CONNECTING A TRAILER

Recognizing a Trailer

1. Attach the trailer and wiring connector to your vehicle.
2. Switch on your vehicle.
3. Set up a profile for the trailer using the touchscreen.

Note: *If your vehicle does not recognize the trailer, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds.*

Note: *Trailer profiles store trailer types, dimensions, preferences, trailer specific mileage and fuel economy.*

Note: *Disabling the trailer detection notification makes the default trailer profile active when a connection is detected.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

Safety Chains

Install trailer safety chains to the trailer hitch as recommended by the manufacturer. Cross the chains under the trailer coupler and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

Note: *Do not attach safety chains to the bumper. Always connect safety chains to the safety chain loops on the tow bar.*

Trailer Connection Checklist

1. Press ***CONTROLS***.
2. Press ***Towing***.
3. Press ***Connection checklist***.

Electronic Park Hold

Applies the electronic parking brake when you shift to park (P).

The electronic park hold button illuminates when activated.

The feature prevents your vehicle from moving in any direction when you are aligned with your trailer coupler and shift to park (P).

Note: *The feature is active for the current key cycle.*

You can also press a zoom button when using the camera views to switch the feature on.

TRAILER LIGHTING CHECK

WARNING: Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Perform a trailer light illumination sequence to confirm that all lights are functioning by using the FordPass app or the vehicle's touchscreen.

Note: *The FordPass app allows one person to confirm that all lights are functioning.*

Performing the Trailer Lighting Check Using the Touchscreen

1. Press ***CONTROLS***.
2. Press ***Towing***.
3. Press ***Trailer Light Check***.
4. Press ***Start***.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CONNECTING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTING A TRAILER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Trailer disconnected	The system senses a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, during a given ignition cycle.
Wiring malfunction on trailer	There are certain faults in your vehicle wiring and trailer wiring or brake system.
Trailer battery not charging See manual	There is a fault with your trailer battery, or your trailer battery voltage is very low.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

TRAILER BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

WARNING: Do not tow a trailer fitted with electric trailer brakes unless your vehicle is fitted with a compatible aftermarket electronic trailer brake controller. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

Certain states require functioning trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight.

Ford Motor Company recommends separate functioning brake systems for trailers weighing more than 750 kg (1,655 lb) when loaded.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

The vehicle's load capacity designation is by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle or trailer.

Note: *Your vehicle could have reduced performance when operating at high altitudes and when heavily loaded or towing a trailer. When driving at elevation, to match driving performance as perceived at sea level, reduce gross vehicle weight and gross combination weight by 2% per 300 m (1,000 ft) elevation.*

LAUNCHING OR RETRIEVING A BOAT OR PERSONAL WATERCRAFT

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 15 cm (6 in) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding 15 cm (6 in) could allow water to enter vehicle components, causing internal damage to the components and affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

Note: *Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water.*

Note: *Disconnect the trailer wiring connector before backing the trailer into the water.*

Note: *Reconnect the trailer wiring connector after removing the trailer from the water.*

TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES

Trailer Nose Weight

Towbar type	Powertrain	Minimum Nose Weight	Maximum Nose Weight
Type 1	All	10% of the towed weight	350 kg (772 lb)
Type 2	All	6% of the towed weight	210 kg (463 lb)

TOWING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING

TOWING A TRAILER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Trailer left indicator lights malfunction Check lights	The left-hand trailer turn lamp requires service.
Trailer right indicator lights malfunction Check lights	The right-hand trailer turn lamp requires service.
Trailer battery not charging See manual	The trailer battery voltage is too low to charge.
Trailer lighting module malfunction See manual	The system detects a short created by the trailer lamps. Inspect and repair the trailer wiring, or have the system checked as soon as possible.
Trailer brake lights malfunction Check lights	The trailer stoplamps require service.
Trailer sway Reduce speed	The trailer sway control detects trailer sway. Reduce the vehicle's speed.

HOW DOES TRAILER SWAY CONTROL WORK

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control lamp flashes and the message ***Trailer sway Reduce speed*** appears in the information display.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution.

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

Note: *This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.*

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.*

SWITCHING TRAILER SWAY CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press ***CONTROLS***.
2. Press ***Towing***.
3. Switch ***Trailer sway control*** on or off.

The system turns on each time you start your vehicle.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

OFF-ROAD SCREEN

WHAT IS THE OFF-ROAD SCREEN

The off-road screen displays information related to the vehicle's position and performance. It is designed to help you get the most out of your vehicle's off-road driving capabilities.

HOW DOES THE OFF-ROAD SCREEN WORK

The off-road screen assists you by:

- Using the cameras to display what is directly in front of and behind your vehicle to help you avoid obstacles.
- Displaying information related to drivetrain status.
- Allowing you to enable or disable a variety of on-demand features.

SWITCHING THE OFF-ROAD SCREEN ON AND OFF

Press and release the off-road switch to enable the feature, press and release the switch again to disable.

The off-road screen can also be switched enabled and disabled through the touchscreen:

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***CONTROLS***.
3. Press ***Off-Road***.

USING THE OFF-ROAD SCREEN

The buttons on the side of the off-road screen allow you to turn the different features on and off.

A	Off-Road camera views.
B	Exit off-road status screen.
C	Information menu.
D	Off-road feature buttons.
E	Active guidelines.

Off-Road Feature Buttons

These buttons activate various off-road features. The features available depend on your vehicle's equipment.

Hill descent control. See **Hill Descent Control** (page 232).

Rear differential lock. See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 205).

Parking aids. See **Parking Aids** (page 237).

Off-Road Information On-Demand

Off-road status.

Pitch and roll.

Parking aid indicators. See **Parking Aid Indicators** (page 241).

Off-Road Camera (If Equipped)

The off-road camera provides a video image of the area in the front or rear of your vehicle. For available camera views, See **Switching the 360 Degree Camera View** (page 247).

Note: *The camera feed may not automatically launch with the off-road screen. If this occurs, use the camera button to re-launch the camera feed. See **Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off** (page 247).*

USING THE OFF-ROAD SCREEN

The buttons on the side of the off-road screen allow you to turn the different features on and off.

A Exit off-road status screen.

B Off-road feature buttons.

Off-Road Feature Buttons

These buttons activate various off-road features. The features available depend on your vehicle's equipment.

Hill descent control. See **Hill Descent Control** (page 232).

Rear differential lock. See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 205).

Parking aids. See **Parking Aids** (page 237).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

OFF-ROAD DRIVING

WHAT IS OFF-ROAD DRIVING

Off-road driving is driving your vehicle on unsurfaced roads or trails, made from dirt, rocks, sand and mud.

BASIC OFF-ROAD DRIVING TECHNIQUES

Off-road Driving Hints

Before taking your vehicle off-roading, a basic vehicle inspection should be done to make sure that the vehicle is in top working condition. It is always recommended that at least two vehicles are used while off-roading. The buddy system helps make sure that help is close at hand should a vehicle become stuck or damaged. It is also wise to take supplies such as a first aid kit, supply of water, tow strap, cell or satellite phone with you any time an off-road excursion is planned.

1. Grip the steering wheel with thumbs on the outside of the rim. This will reduce the risk of injury due to abrupt steering wheel motions that occur when negotiating rough terrain.
2. Throttle, brake and steering inputs should be made in a smooth and controlled manner. Sudden inputs to the controls can cause loss of traction or upset the vehicle, especially while on loose terrain or while crossing obstacles such as rocks or logs.
3. Look ahead on your route noting upcoming obstacles, or any other factors which may indicate a change in available traction, and adjust the vehicle speed and route accordingly.
4. When driving off-road, if the front or rear suspension is bottoming out and/or excessive contact with the skid-plates is encountered, reduce vehicle speed to avoid potential damage to the vehicle.
5. When with other vehicles, it is recommended that communication is used, and the lead vehicle notify other vehicles of obstacles that could cause potential vehicle damage.
6. Always keep available ground clearance in mind and pick a route that minimizes the risk of catching the underside of the vehicle on an obstacle.
7. When negotiating low speed obstacles, applying light brake pressure in conjunction with the throttle will help prevent the vehicle from jerking and will allow you to negotiate the obstacle in a more controlled manner. Using 4L will also help with this.
8. Off-roading requires a high degree of concentration. Even if your local law does not prohibit alcohol use while driving off-road, Ford strongly recommends against drinking if you plan to off-road.

Crossing Obstacles

- Review the path ahead before attempting to cross any obstacle. It is best if the obstacle is reviewed from outside the vehicle so that there is a good understanding of terrain condition both in front of and behind the obstacle.
- Approach obstacles slowly.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

- If a large obstacle such as a rock cannot be avoided, choose a path that places the rock directly under the tire rather than the undercarriage of the vehicle. This will help prevent damage to the vehicle.
- Ditches and washouts should be crossed at a 45º angle, allowing each wheel to independently cross the obstacle.

Hill Climbing

WARNING: Extreme care should be used when steering the vehicle in reverse down a slope so as not to cause the vehicle to swerve out of control.

- Always attempt to climb a steep hill along the fall line of the slope and not diagonally.
- If the vehicle is unable to make it up the hill, DO NOT attempt to turn back down the slope. Place the vehicle in low range and slowly back down in reverse.
- When descending a steep slope, select low gear and engage hill descent control. Use the throttle and brake pedals to control your descent speed.

Note: *Hill descent control is functional in reverse and should be used in this situation.*

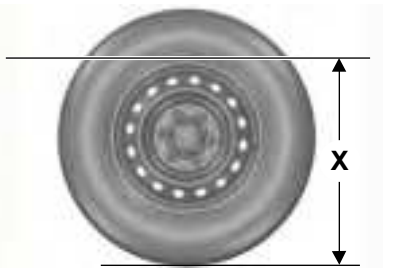
WATER WADING

WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep, fast flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *For Chassis Cab vehicles or where a third party tray has been fitted, confirm the installation is in line with the Ford Body Builders Guide. This ensures fuel tank breathers and driveline breathers are located above the specified water wading lines.*

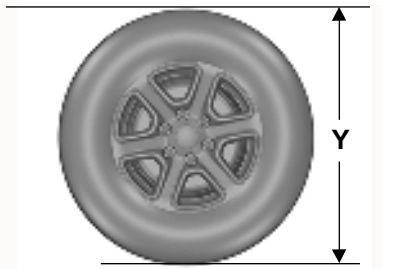
In an emergency, you can drive your vehicle through water to a maximum depth as shown and at a maximum speed of 7 km/h (4 mph). You must take extra care when driving through flowing water.

4x2



X 600mm (23.6 inches)

4x2 (Vehicles with Increased Ride Height) and 4x4



Y 800mm (31.5 inches)

When driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop your vehicle. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Press the brake pedal lightly to check that the brakes are functioning correctly.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that your vehicle's lamps are fully operational.
- Check the power assistance of the steering system.

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

AFTER DRIVING YOUR VEHICLE OFF-ROAD

WARNING: After off-road use, before returning to the road, check the wheels and tires for damage. Off-road use may cause damage to your wheels and tires that can lead to tire failure, loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

WARNING: Always re-inflate tires to recommended tire pressures before the vehicle is operated on-road. The recommended pressure is located on the tire label or safety certification label, located on the B-pillar, inside the driver's door.

Driving off-road places more stress on your vehicle than most on-road driving. After driving off-road check for damage to your vehicle and, if necessary, have your vehicle fixed as soon as possible.

Inspect the underbody of your vehicle by checking tires, body structure, steering, suspension, and exhaust system for damage.

Check the radiator for mud and debris and clean as needed.

Remove accumulations of plants or brush. These things could be a fire hazard or hide damage to the fuel lines, brake hoses, and propeller shafts.

After extended operation in mud, sand, water, or similar dirty conditions, inspect the underbody and clean your vehicle as soon as possible.

If you experience unusual vibration after driving in mud, slush or similar conditions, check the wheels for impacted material. Impacted material can cause vibrations while driving and wheel imbalance. Remove the material to resolve the problem.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25ºC (-13ºF).

DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

FLOOR MATS

WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF

The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

Note: *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

WARNING: If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

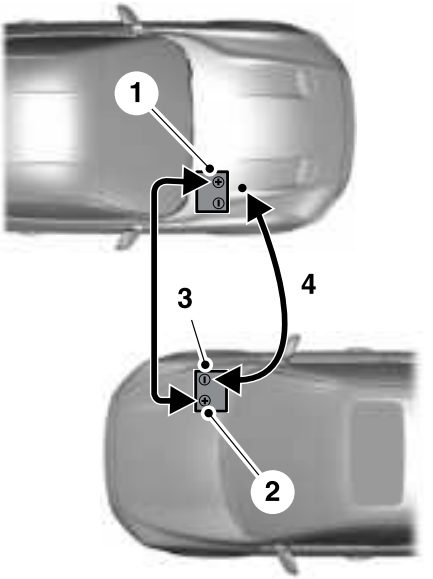
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

Connecting the Jumper Cables

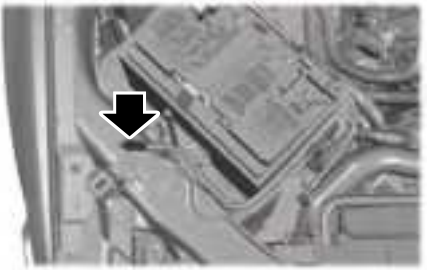
WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

Note: *If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.*



1. Pull the red rubber boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.

Note: *Do not use the hood latch as a negative (-) connection point. This could cause springs in the latch to burn and prevent the hood from operating correctly.*



Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: *Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.*

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, the unlock button on the remote control, the panic button on the remote control or cycle the ignition to switch the system off.

Note: *The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.*

POST IMPACT BRAKING

HOW DOES POST IMPACT BRAKING WORK

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

POST IMPACT BRAKING LIMITATIONS

Post impact braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

OVERRIDING POST IMPACT BRAKING

You can override post impact braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

POST IMPACT BRAKING INDICATORS

It flashes when a post impact braking event is occurring.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

Note: *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

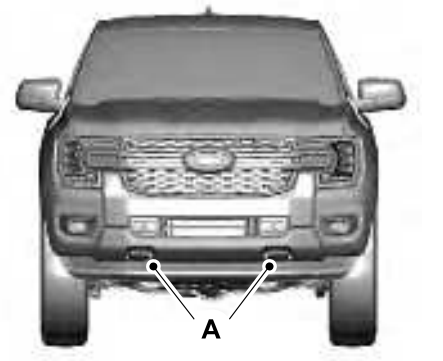
RECOVERY TOWING

ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT - EXCLUDING: FX4+/ WILDTRAK

WARNING: Using recovery hooks is dangerous and should only be done by a person familiar with proper vehicle recovery safety practices. Improper use of recovery hooks may cause hook failure or separation from the vehicle and could result in serious injury or death.

WARNING: Slowly remove the slack from the recovery strap prior to pulling. Failure to do so can introduce significantly higher loads which can cause the recovery hooks to break off, or the recovery strap to fail which can cause serious injury or death.

WARNING: Never link two straps together with a clevis pin. These heavy metal objects could become projectiles if the strap breaks and can cause serious injury or death.



A. Front recovery hooks.

Note: *Your vehicle's front towing point configuration may be slightly different.*

Note: *Do not apply a load to the recovery hooks that is greater than the gross vehicle weight rating of your vehicle.*

Before using recovery hooks:

- Make sure all attaching points are secure and capable of withstanding the applied load.
- Do not use chains, cables or tow straps with metal hook ends.
- Only use recovery straps that have a minimum breaking strength two to three times the gross vehicle weight of the stuck vehicle.
- Make sure the recovery strap is in good condition and free of visible cuts, tears or damage.
- Use a damper device such as a tarp, heavy blanket or piece of carpet, and place it over the recovery strap to help absorb the energy in the event the strap breaks.

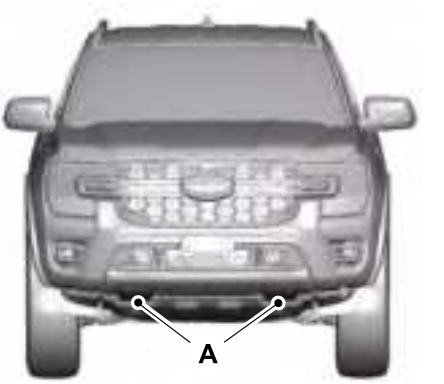
- Make sure the stuck vehicle is not loaded heavier than its gross vehicle weight rating specified on the certification label.
- Align the tow vehicle and stuck vehicle in a straight line, within 10 degrees.
- Keep bystanders to the sides of the vehicle, at a distance of at least twice the length of the recovery strap. This helps avoid injury from the hazard of a recovery hook or strap breaking, or a vehicle lurching into their path.

ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT - FX4+/WILDTRAK

WARNING: Using recovery hooks is dangerous and should only be done by a person familiar with proper vehicle recovery safety practices. Improper use of recovery hooks may cause hook failure or separation from the vehicle and could result in serious injury or death.

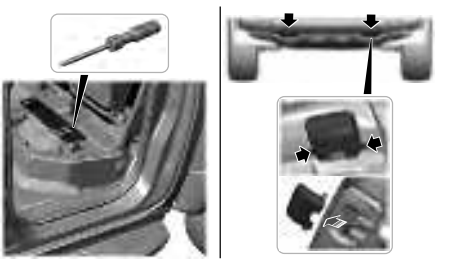
WARNING: Slowly remove the slack from the recovery strap prior to pulling. Failure to do so can introduce significantly higher loads which can cause the recovery hooks to break off, or the recovery strap to fail which can cause serious injury or death.

WARNING: Never link two straps together with a clevis pin. These heavy metal objects could become projectiles if the strap breaks and can cause serious injury or death.



A. Front recovery hooks.

Use the provided under-seat tool to remove the recovery hook covers:



Note: *Your vehicle's front towing point configuration may be slightly different.*

Note: *Do not apply a load to the recovery hooks that is greater than the gross vehicle weight rating of your vehicle.*

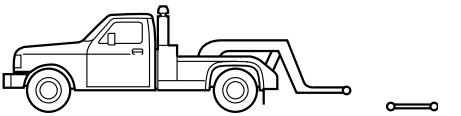
Before using recovery hooks:

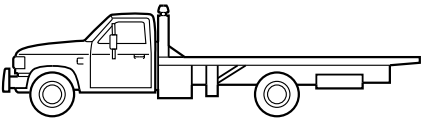
- Make sure all attaching points are secure and capable of withstanding the applied load.
- Do not use chains, cables or tow straps with metal hook ends.

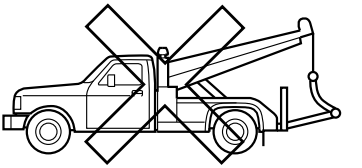
Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

- Only use recovery straps that have a minimum breaking strength two to three times the gross vehicle weight of the stuck vehicle.
- Make sure the recovery strap is in good condition and free of visible cuts, tears or damage.
- Use a damper device such as a tarp, heavy blanket or piece of carpet, and place it over the recovery strap to help absorb the energy in the event the strap breaks.
- Make sure the stuck vehicle is not loaded heavier than its gross vehicle weight rating specified on the certification label.
- Align the tow vehicle and stuck vehicle in a straight line, within 10 degrees.
- Keep bystanders to the sides of the vehicle, at a distance of at least twice the length of the recovery strap. This helps avoid injury from the hazard of a recovery hook or strap breaking, or a vehicle lurching into their path.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE







If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Vehicle damage could occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Front-wheel and rear-wheel drive vehicles must have their designated drive wheels off the ground regardless of towing direction. Use tow dollies to prevent damage to the transmission.

All-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicles require that all wheels be off the ground using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission and drive system.

Note: *You need to switch on the ignition to unlock the steering.*

Note: *Make sure you check the steering column before towing. It could lock if the battery is dead.*

EMERGENCY TOWING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

WARNING: When towing your vehicle you must select neutral (N).

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- Maximum speed is 56 km/h (35 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

Only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

EMERGENCY TOWING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNING: When towing your vehicle you must select neutral (N).

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- Use the manual park release procedure. Failure to do so may result in damage to the transmission.
- Maximum speed is 56 km/h (35 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission, do not use individual axle carriers. All wheels must be lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.

Do not tow the vehicle with all wheels on the ground while in 4WD mode. Tow your vehicle with all wheels off the ground or all wheels on the ground while the vehicle is in 2WD mode in an event of a breakdown or mechanical failure of the transmission.

Only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Note: *If you need to exceed a speed of 20 km/h (10 mph) and a distance of 20 km (12 mi) while towing, you must lift the drive wheels clear of the ground.*

Note: *It is recommended you do not tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move the vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 20 km/h (10 mph) or farther than 20 km (12 mi).*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

STORING A FIRST AID KIT

Single Cab

You can store a first aid kit in the glove box.

Double Cab

You can store a first aid kit under the rear seat.

STORING A FIRE EXTINGUISHER

1KG Fire Extinguisher (If Equipped)

You can store the fire extinguisher under the front passenger seat.

2KG Fire Extinguisher (If Equipped)

You can store the fire extinguisher under the second row seat.

STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE (IF EQUIPPED)

Single Cab

You can store a warning triangle behind the front seats.

Double Cab

You can store a warning triangle under the passenger seat.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

FUSE PRECAUTIONS

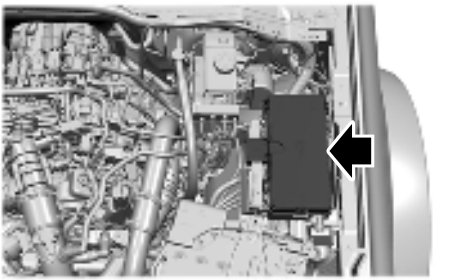
WARNING: Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

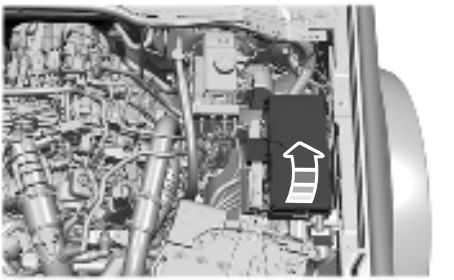
WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

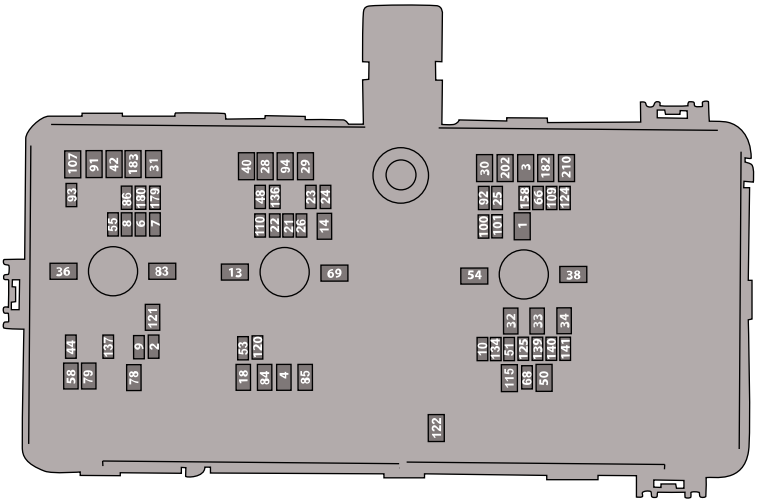
LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	30 A	Body control module 1.
2	20 A	Crankcase ventilation heater (2.0L, 3.0L diesel).
3	30 A	Body control module 2.
4	30 A	Fuel pump.
5	—	Not used.
6	25 A	Powertrain control module power.
7	30 A	Exhaust gas recirculation bypass valve (3.0L diesel). Variable camshaft timing (2.3L). Vacuum solenoid valve (2.0L). Exhaust sensors (2.3L gas).

Item	Rating	Protected Component
		Canister purge valve (2.3L gas).
8	20 A	Heater positive crankcase ventilation valve (3.0L diesel). Variable oil pump (3.0L diesel). Ignition coils (2.3L gas). Active grille shutter motor. Cooling fan relays. A/C clutch solenoid. Auxiliary water pump. Aspirate valve control.
9	20 A	Glow plug control module (diesel). Particulate matter sensor (diesel). Nitrous oxide sensor (diesel). Oil pump solenoid (2.3L gas). Turbocharger surge valve (2.3L gas). Engine coolant bypass valve (2.3L gas). 4x4 relay coil.
10	20 A	Fuel volume control valve (3.0L diesel). Transmission control module.
11	—	Not used.
12	—	Not used.
13	40 A	Front blower motor.
14	20 A	Automatic transmission fluid pump (diesel).
15	—	Not used.
16	—	Not used.
17	—	Not used.

Item	Rating	Protected Component
18	30 A	Starter motor.
19	—	Not used.
20	—	Not used.
21	10 A	Automatic headlamp leveling.
22	10 A	Not used (spare).
23	10 A	Anti-lock brake system module.
24	10 A	Powertrain control module. Glow plug control module (2.0L , 3.0L diesel) Electronic power assist steering.
25	20 A	Driveline control module. Rear camera.
26	15 A	Transmission control module. Transmission oil pump. Automatic transmission fluid pump (diesel).
27	—	Not used.
28	60 A	Anti-lock brake system valves.
29	60 A	Anti-lock brake system pump.
30	40 A	Left-hand power seat.
31	40 A	Right-hand power seat.
32	20 A	Power point - first row.
33	20 A	Power point - rear console.
34	20 A	Rear cargo power outlet - bedliner power point.
35	—	Not used.
36	60 A	Inverter.

Item	Rating	Protected Component
37	—	Not used.
38	40 A	Heated seats control module.
39	—	Not used.
40	30 A	Not used (spare).
41	—	Not used.
42	30 A	Trailer tow brake module.
43	—	Not used.
44	10 A	Brake switch.
45	—	Not used.
46	—	Not used.
47	—	Not used.
48	30 A	Rear heated seat module - right.
49	—	Not used.
50	40 A	Heated backlite.
51	15 A	Not used (spare).
52	—	Not used.
53	15 A	Rear electronic differential lock.
54	40 A	Driveline control module.
55	30 A	Trailer tow park lamp.
56	—	Not used.
57	—	Not used.
58	15 A	Trailer tow backup lamp.
59	—	Not used.
60	—	Not used.
61	—	Not used.

Item	Rating	Protected Component
62	—	Not used.
63	—	Not used.
64	—	Not used.
65	—	Not used.
66	10 A	Not used (spare).
67	—	Not used.
68	20 A	Steering column lock.
69	30 A	Wiper motor.
70	—	Not used.
71	—	Not used.
72	—	Not used.
73	—	Not used.
74	—	Not used.
75	—	Not used.
76	—	Not used.
77	—	Not used.
78	50 A	Front windscreen defrost left-hand.
79	50 A	Front windscreen defrost right-hand.
80	—	Not used.
81	—	Not used.
82	—	Not used.
83	50 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater 1 (3.0L diesel).
84	50 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater 2 (3.0L diesel).
85	50 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater 3 (3.0L diesel).

Item	Rating	Protected Component
86	15 A	Selective catalytic reduction system heater 2 (2.0L, 3.0L diesel).
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.
89	—	Not used.
90	—	Not used.
91	40 A	Trailer tow module.
92	10 A	Accessory.
93	5 A	Not used (spare).
94	20 A	Not used (spare).
95	—	Not used.
96	—	Not used.
97	—	Not used.
98	—	Not used.
99	—	Not used.
100	20 A	Left-hand headlamps.
101	20 A	Right-hand headlamps.
102	—	Not used.
103	—	Not used.
104	—	Not used.
105	—	Not used.
106	—	Not used.
107	30 A	Trailer tow module - battery charger.
108	—	Not used.
109	20 A	Amplifier.
110	30 A	Trailer tow auxiliary.

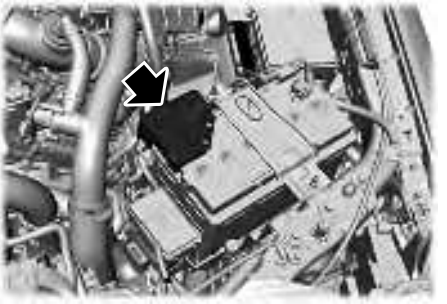
Item	Rating	Protected Component
111	—	Not used.
112	—	Not used.
113	—	Not used.
114	—	Not used.
115	30 A	Power roller shutter.
116	—	Not used.
117	—	Not used.
118	—	Not used.
119	—	Not used.
120	10 A	Water in fuel heater relay coils (diesel).
121	40 A	Water in fuel heater (diesel).
122	30 A	Transfer case control module.
123	—	Not used.
124	5 A	Rain sensor.
125	10 A	Not used (spare).
126	—	Not used.
127	—	Not used.
128	—	Not used.
129	—	Not used.
130	—	Not used.
131	—	Not used.
132	—	Not used.
133	—	Not used.
134	25 A	Not used (spare).
135	—	Not used.

Item	Rating	Protected Component
136	30 A	Rear heated seat module - left.
137	20 A	Advanced driver assistance system.
138	—	Not used.
139	5 A	Not used (spare).
140	5 A	USB smart charge port - rear console.
141	5 A	USB smart charge port - top.
142	—	Not used.
143	—	Not used.
145	—	Not used.
146	—	Not used.
147	—	Not used.
148	—	Not used.
149	—	Not used.
150	—	Not used.
151	—	Not used.
152	—	Not used.
153	—	Not used.
154	—	Not used.
155	—	Not used.
156	—	Not used.
157	—	Not used.
158	10 A	Not used (spare).
159	—	Not used.
160	—	Not used.
161	—	Not used.

Item	Rating	Protected Component
162	—	Not used.
163	—	Not used.
164	—	Not used.
165	—	Not used.
166	—	Not used.
167	—	Not used.
168	—	Not used.
169	—	Not used.
170	—	Not used.
171	—	Not used.
172	—	Not used.
173	—	Not used.
174	—	Not used.
175	—	Not used.
176	—	Not used.
177	—	Not used.
178	—	Not used.
179	15 A	Selective catalytic reduction system heater 1 (diesel).
180	10 A	Selective catalytic reduction system heater 3 (diesel).
181	—	Not used.
182	60 A	Drive door module.
183	60 A	Passenger door module.
192	—	Not used.
202	60 A	Body control module B+.
210	30 A	Body control module start-stop.

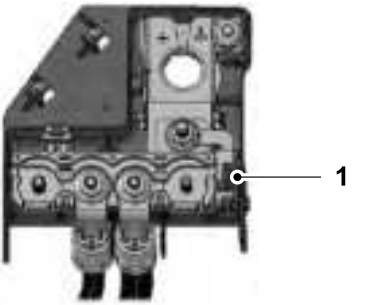
BATTERY FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE BATTERY FUSE BOX



ACCESSING THE BATTERY FUSE BOX

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BATTERY FUSE BOX



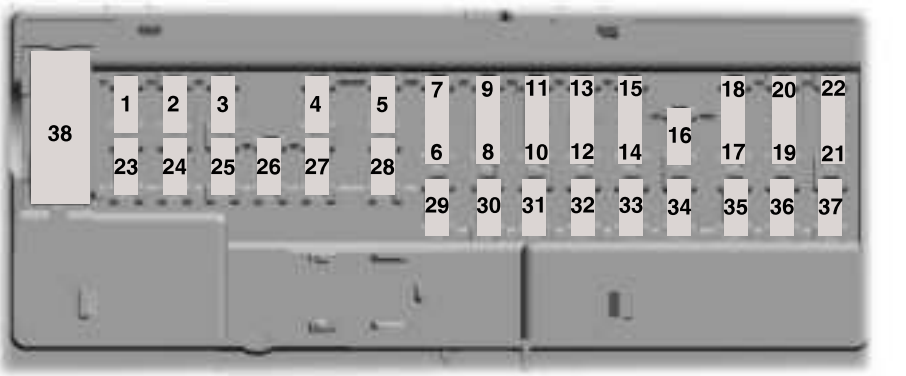
Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	3 A	Battery Monitoring System.

BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

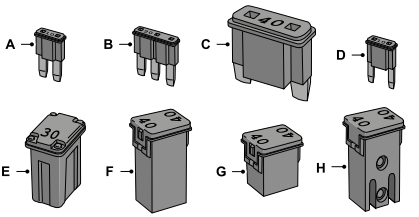


Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	10 A	Inverter. Door lock switch. Power window switch.
3	7.5 A	Wireless accessory charging module.

Item	Rating	Protected Component
4	—	Not used.
5	—	Not used.
6	10 A	Alarm horn. Battery backup sounder.
7	10 A	Not used (spare).
8	5 A	Telematics modem.
9	5 A	Combined sensor module.
10	—	Not used.
11	—	Not used.
12	7.5 A	Climate control module. Gear shift module. Enhanced central gateway module.
13	7.5 A	Steering column control module. Instrument panel.
14	15 A	Not used.
15	15 A	On board diagnostic connector. SYNC.
16	—	Not used.
17	7.5 A	Trailer brake switch. Adaptive front lighting module.
18	7.5 A	Auxiliary switch. Tachograph.
19	5 A	Headlamp switch pack.
20	5 A	Ignition switch. Push button switch.
21	5 A	Not used (spare).
22	5 A	Not used (spare).
23	30 A	Not used (spare).

Item	Rating	Protected Component
24	30 A	Not used (spare).
25	20 A	Not used (spare).
26	30 A	Not used (spare).
27	30 A	Not used (spare).
28	30 A	Not used (spare).
29	15 A	Display. Tachograph.
30	5 A	Brake switch.
31	10 A	Terrain management switch. Integrated control module. Driver status monitor module. Radio frequency receiver module.
32	20 A	Audio control module.
33	—	Not used.
34	30 A	Run/start relay.
35	5 A	Not used (spare).
36	15 A	Parking aid module. Rear seat module.
37	20 A	Electrochomatic mirror. Heated steering wheel control module.
38	30 A	Power window switch.

IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



A Micro 2.
B Micro 3.
C Maxi.
D Mini.
E M Case.
F J Case.
G J Case Low Profile.
H Slotted M Case.

FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

When do I need to check a fuse?

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

If a fuse has blown.

How do I identify a blown fuse?

You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

BRAKE SYSTEM INSPECTION

Disc brake pads should be checked to confirm that each disc brake pad lining has a suitable amount of friction material for safe use.

Inspection and Verification

Note: *Disc brake pads must be replaced as an axle set. Do not replace an individual disc brake pad or disc brake pads on one brake assembly only.*

1. Using a suitable tool, such as an inspection mirror, look into the inspection hole on the back of each disc brake caliper.
2. Inspect the inner and outer disc brake pads to confirm each disc brake pad lining measures 1.5 mm (0.1 in) thick or more.

Note: *See your authorized dealer if any disc brake pad lining is under 1.5 mm (0.1 in) thickness.*

Inspect each brake caliper and anchor bracket for corrosion, wear, or damage.

Wear Adjustment

Automatic adjustment of disc brake friction material during brake application occurs as follows:

- The piston slides within its bore to a new position, taking up the brake pad wear.
- The brake caliper moves on its guide pins, taking up the brake pad wear.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 415).

WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.

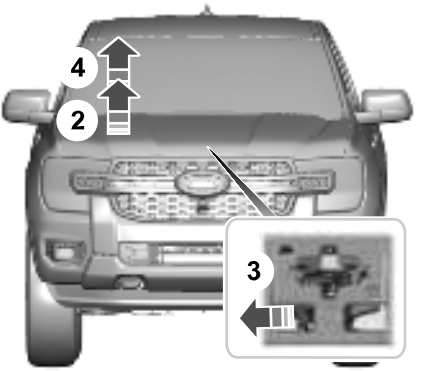
WARNING: Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

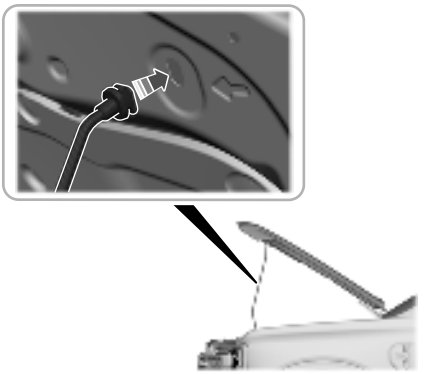
Opening the Hood

1. Pull the hood release lever.

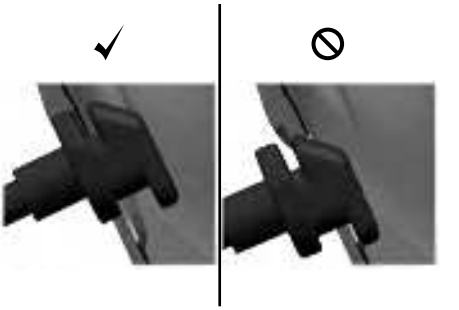


2. Slightly lift the hood.
3. Release the hood latch by pushing the secondary release lever to your left-hand side.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM



4. Open the hood and support it with the prop rod.



5. Make sure you fully engage the prop rod end cap with the hood.

Closing the Hood

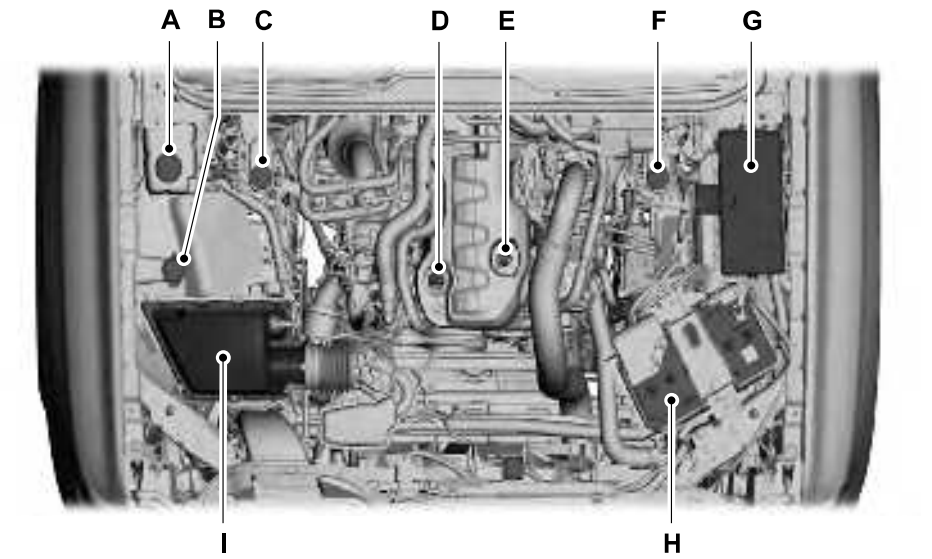
WARNING: Make sure that you fully latch the hood before driving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Fully stow the prop rod prior to lowering the hood.
2. To close, lower the hood and make sure that it fully latches.

Note: *Make sure the hood is closed completely.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L DIESEL



A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 369).

B Windshield washer fluid. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 428).

C Brake fluid reservoir - Right-hand drive. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 210).

D Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 364).

E Engine oil dipstick. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 364).

F Brake fluid reservoir - Left-hand drive. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 210).

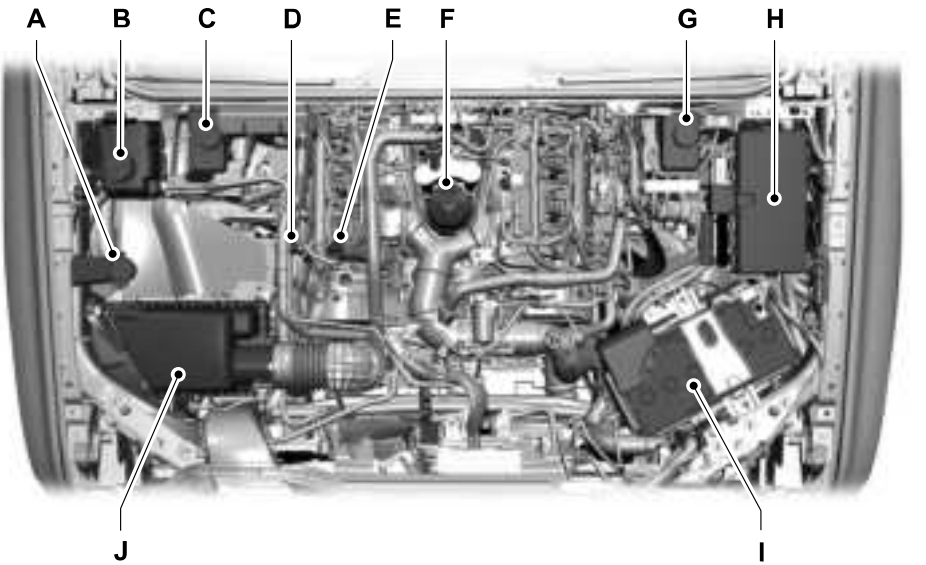
G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 345).

H Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 374).

I Air filter. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 366).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 3.0L DIESEL



A Windshield washer fluid. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 82).

B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 369).

C Brake fluid reservoir - Right-hand drive. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 210).

D Engine oil dipstick. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 364).

E Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 364).

F Oil Filter.

G Brake fluid reservoir - Left-hand drive. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 210).

H Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 344).

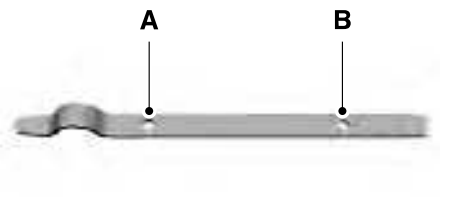
I Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 374).

J Air filter. See **Engine Air Filter** (page 366).

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

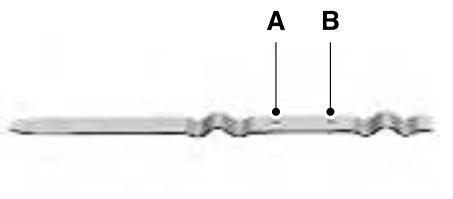
ENGINE OIL

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - 2.0L DIESEL



A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - 3.0L DIESEL



A Minimum.
B Maximum.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

Note: *Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.*

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

Note: *If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.*

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).*

Note: *Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.*

Note: *If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, schedule a visit to your authorized dealer.*

ADDING ENGINE OIL

WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 415).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.*

WHAT IS THE ENGINE OIL CHANGE REMINDER

The Engine Oil Change Reminder notifies you when to change the engine oil by displaying a message in the instrument cluster display.

HOW DOES THE ENGINE OIL CHANGE REMINDER WORK

The Engine Oil change reminder uses several important factors in its calculations such as driving habits and driving conditions, to determine if an engine oil change is required.

For additional information about when to expect the engine oil change message, refer to your scheduled maintenance information or contact an authorized dealer.

RESETTING THE INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***Vehicle***.
4. Select ***Oil life***.
5. Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

For filling information, please refer to the Capacities and Specifications section of your owner's manual. See **Engine Oil Capacity and Specification** (page 365).

ENGINE OIL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Change engine oil soon	Displays when the engine oil life is becoming depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible.
Oil change required	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible.

ENGINE AIR FILTER

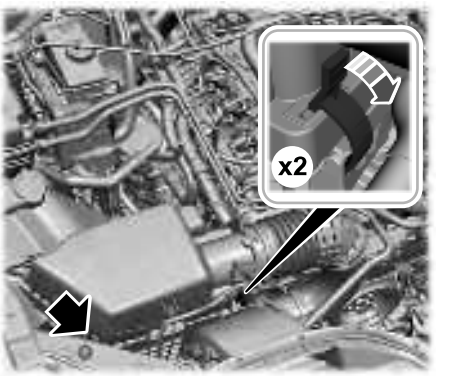
CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

Change the air filter element at the correct service interval.

Use the correct specification air filter element.

Note: *Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle warranty.*



1. Release the clamps that secure the air filter cover to the housing.
2. Unclip the wiring loom from the air-cleaner lid.
3. Carefully lift the air filter housing cover. Take care to avoid other surrounding components while lifting.

4. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
5. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing and cover to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and that you have a good seal.
6. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover.
7. Install the air filter housing cover.
8. Refit the wiring loom clip to the air filter housing.
9. Engage the clips to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.

ENGINE AIR FILTER - INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Filter OK	Indicates the engine air filter is performing as expected.
Check filter See manual	Indicates that there is a higher than expected restriction across the engine air filter, which could represent an air filter at full useful life or a filter with an obstruction. When this displays, inspect the engine air filter and replace if necessary. After the inspection or engine air filter replacement, you must reset the system in order to change the status from Check Filter to Filter OK.
System malfunction See manual	Indicates that there is an error within the electronic air filter maintenance minder system requiring service.

DRAINING THE FUEL FILTER WATER TRAP

WARNING: Do not drain the water-in-fuel separator while the engine is running. Failure to follow this warning may result in fire, serious injury, death or property damage.

WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

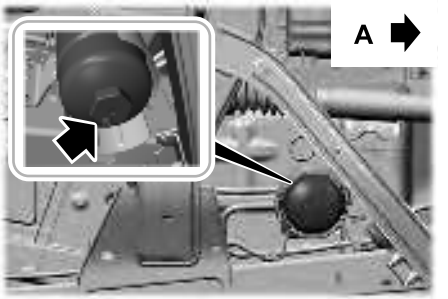
Your vehicle's fuel system has a fuel filter and water separator to remove water from the fuel.

If the water in fuel indicator illuminates when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, shut off the engine, then drain the fuel and water separator.

Note: *Allowing water to stay in the fuel system after the water in fuel indicator illuminates could result in extensive damage or failure of the fuel injection system.*

The fuel water trap is beneath the frame rail under the driver side of the vehicle.

Make sure the ignition is off before performing the following steps.



A Front of Vehicle.

1. Loosen the drain plug approximately one and a half turns.
2. Allow the water to drain.
3. Tighten the drain plug until you feel a strong resistance.
4. Switch the ignition on for 30 seconds, then switch the ignition off. Repeat twice.
5. Start the engine.
6. Check for leaks.

Note: *The water in fuel warning lamp turns off after approximately two seconds with the engine running.*

Note: *The in-tank pump will turn off automatically after approximately 30 seconds.*

COOLANT

COOLANT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the ***MAX*** mark.

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 470).

Note: *Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.*

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34ºC (-29ºF) and -37ºC (-35ºF). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

ADDING COOLANT

WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.*

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 415). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 415). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

Note: *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 415).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 470).

MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS

If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.

A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

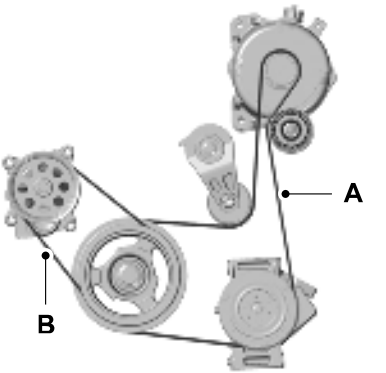
COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description and Action
High engine temperature Stop safely	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 369).

CHANGING THE FUEL FILTER

Your fuel filters must be changed at the correct service interval or when you see the low fuel pressure message appear. Refer to scheduled maintenance for the correct service interval.

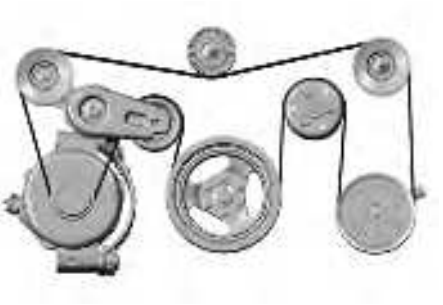
DRIVE BELT ROUTING OVERVIEW - 2.0L DIESEL



A. Long drive belt is on the first pulley groove closest to the engine.

B. Short drive belt is on the second pulley groove farthest from the engine.

DRIVE BELT ROUTING OVERVIEW - 3.0L DIESEL



12V BATTERY

12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling**.

WARNING: This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

Note: *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 360).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Window Bounce-Back** (page 97).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Replacing the Battery

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, battery cover and battery cable terminals.*

RESETTING THE BATTERY SENSOR

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

Note: *Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.*

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12 volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12 volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12 volt battery when the vehicle is off.

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS

If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

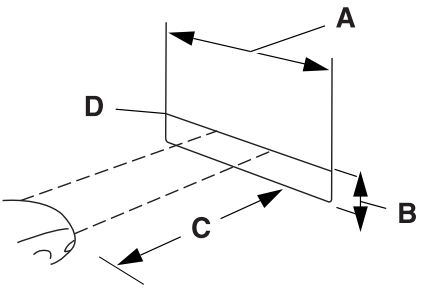
Message	Details
Check Charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service now	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
Battery state of charge low	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 335). This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical power saver active Some features turned off See manual	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, contact an authorized dealer to check and realign your headlamps.

Headlamp Aiming Target



A 15 feet (4.5 m).
B Center height of lamp to ground.
C 35 feet (10 m).
D B height minus 100 mm.

1. Park your vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 10 m (35 ft) away.
2. Measure height from the center of the low beam to the ground and, from this measurement, deduct 4 in (10cm) and add a reference line 15 ft (4.5 m) wide on vertical wall or screen at this height. A piece of masking tape works well.
3. Switch on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood. Cover one of the headlamps so no light hits the wall.

4. On the wall or screen, observe a light pattern with a distinct horizontal edge toward the right. If this edge is not at the horizontal reference line, adjust the beam so the edge is at the same height as the horizontal reference line.

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Use a screwdriver to turn the adjuster either counterclockwise or clockwise to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp.
6. Repeat Steps 3 through 7 to adjust the other headlamp.
7. Close the hood and switch off the headlamps.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is not adjustable.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

EXTERIOR BULBS

EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and provide quality bulb illumination time.

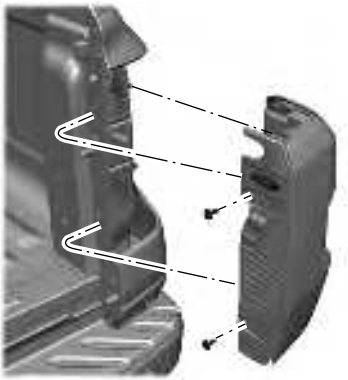
Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Center high mounted cargo lamp. Vehicles with pickup box.	LED	LED
Daytime running lamp (If equipped).	Low Series - W21/5W Mid and High Series - LED	Low Series - 21W Mid and High Series - LED
Front position lamp.	Low - W21/5W (lamps with DTRL) Low - W5W (lamps without DTRL) Mid and High - LED	Low - 5W Mid and High - LED
Front turn signal.	Low and Mid Series - PY21W High Series - LED	Mid and Low Series - 21W High Series - LED
Front fog lamp.	Low Series - H11 Mid and High Series - LED	Low Series - 55W Mid and High Series - LED
Headlamp low beam.	Low Series - H7 Mid and High Series - LED	Low Series - 55W Mid and High Series - LED
Headlamp high beam.	Low Series - HB3 Mid and High Series - LED	Low Series - 65W Mid and High Series - LED
License plate lamp.	Low Series - W5W Mid and High Series - LED	Low Series - 5W Mid and High Series - LED
Puddle lamp.	LED	LED
Rear cargo box lamp.	LED	LED
Rear turn signal.	Low and Mid Series - WY21W High Series - LED	Low and Mid Series - 21W High Series - LED
Rear lamp, stop lamp.	Low Series - W21/5W	Low Series - 21W

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
	Mid and High Series - LED	Mid and High Series - LED
Rear position lamp.	Low Series - W21/5W Mid and High Series - LED	Low Series - 5W Mid and High Series - LED
Reversing lamp.	Low and Mid Series - W16W High Series - LED	Low and Mid Series - 16W High Series - LED
Rear fog (If equipped).	Low and Mid Series - W21W High Series - LED	Low and Mid Series - 21W High Series - LED

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*

REMOVING A REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY

1. Make sure the headlamps and rear lamps are off.
2. Open the tailgate to access the rear lamp assemblies.



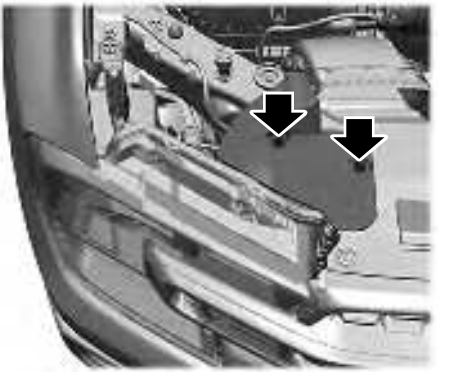
3. Remove the two bolts from the tail lamp assembly. Carefully pull the lamp assembly from the tailgate pillar.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A HEADLAMP BULB

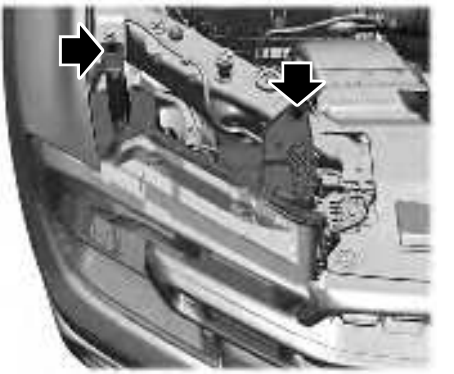
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Accessing and Replacing the Low Beam Headlamp Bulbs

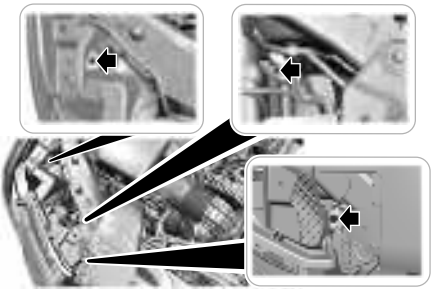
1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the scrivet from the modesty panel.
3. Remove the modesty panel section.



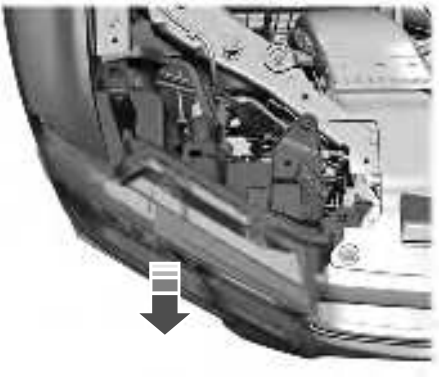
4. Remove the scrivet from the front fender and the hardware from the bolster.



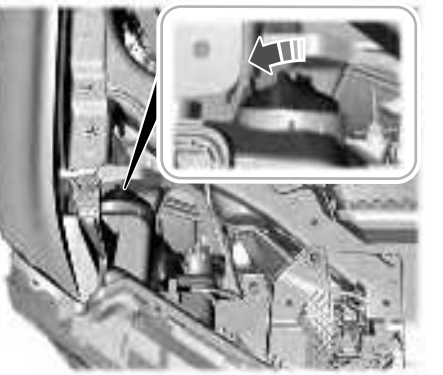
5. Using a screwdriver loosen, but do not remove, the three screws by turning them two full turns.



6. Carefully slide the headlamp assembly forward approximately 30 mm (1.2 in), do not remove the headlamp. Be careful of the sharp fender edge, as it could damage the headlamp.



7. Rotate the low beam bulb cap counterclockwise and remove it from the vehicle.



8. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb.
9. Place your hand behind the headlamp and push the retainer toward the lamp and down.
10. Move the bulb retainer away from the bulb and remove the bulb.

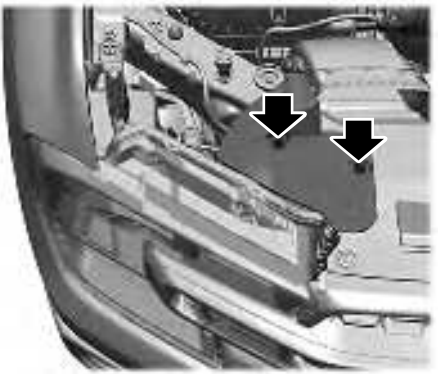
11. To install the bulb, reverse the removal steps.

Note: *Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Handle the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.*

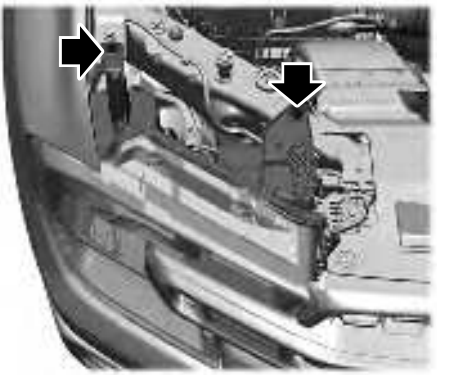
Note: *If the bulb is accidentally touched, clean it with rubbing alcohol before installing it.*

Accessing and Replacing the High Beam Headlamp Bulbs

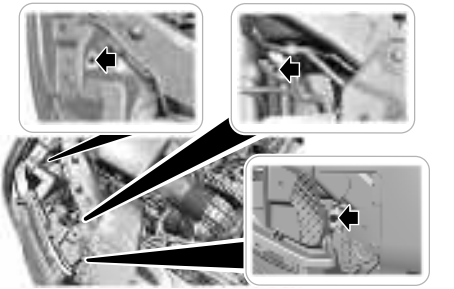
1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the scrivet from the modesty panel.
3. Remove the modesty panel section.



4. Remove the scrivet from the front fender and the hardware from the bolster.

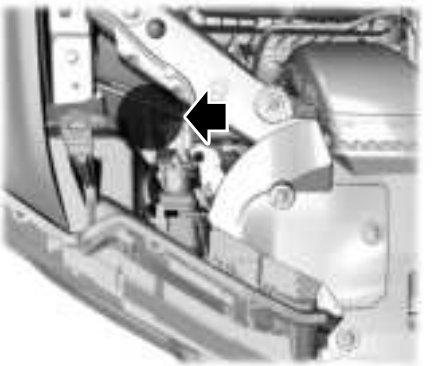


5. Using a screwdriver loosen, but do not remove, the three screws by turning them two full turns.

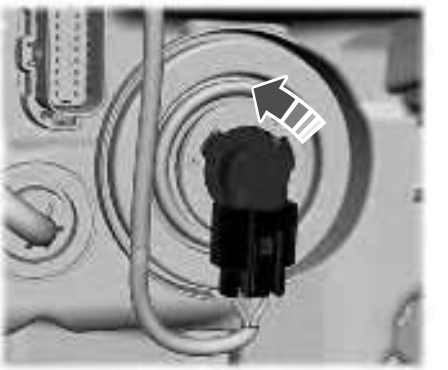


6. Carefully slide the headlamp assembly forward approximately 30 mm (1.2 in),do not remove the headlamp. Be careful of the sharp fender edge, as it could damage the headlamp.

7. Reach into the space below the low beam socket.



8. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb.
9. Rotate the high beam bulb socket counterclockwise and remove the high beam bulb.



10. To install the bulb, reverse the removal steps.

Note: *Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Handle the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.*

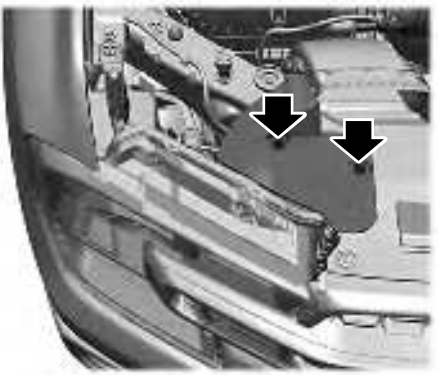
Note: *If the bulb is accidentally touched, clean it with rubbing alcohol before installing it.*

CHANGING A FRONT TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB

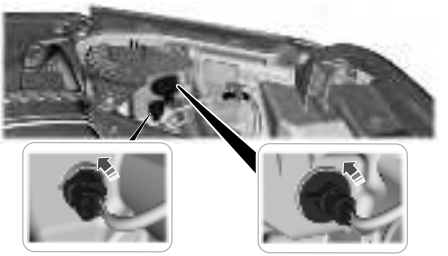
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Changing a Front Turn Signal Lamp Bulb with Halogen Headlamps

1. Make sure the headlamps and the front turn signal lamps are off.
2. Remove the scrivet from the modesty panel.
3. Remove the modesty panel section.



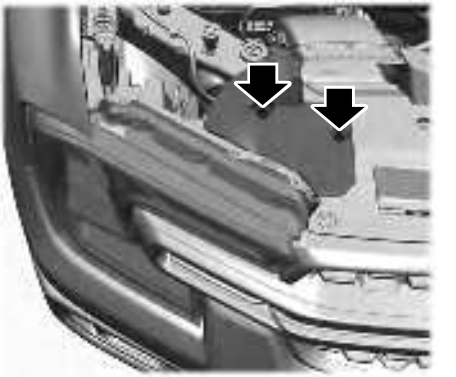
4. Reach behind the headlamp assembly and rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the headlamp assembly.
5. Remove the bulb from the socket.



6. To install the bulb, reverse the removal steps.

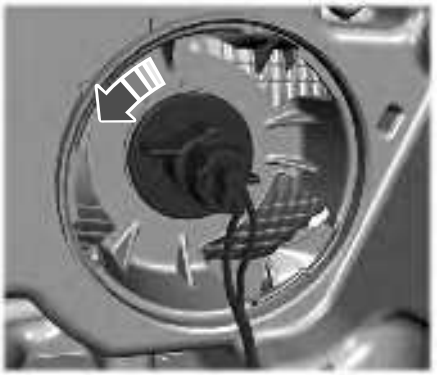
Changing a Front Turn Signal Lamp Bulb with Mid Level Headlamps

1. Make sure the headlamps and the front turn signal lamps are off.
2. Remove the scrivet from the modesty panel.
3. Remove the modesty panel section.



4. Rotate the low beam bulb cap counterclockwise and remove it from the headlamp assembly.

5. Reach behind the headlamp assembly and rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the headlamp assembly.
6. Remove the bulb from the socket.



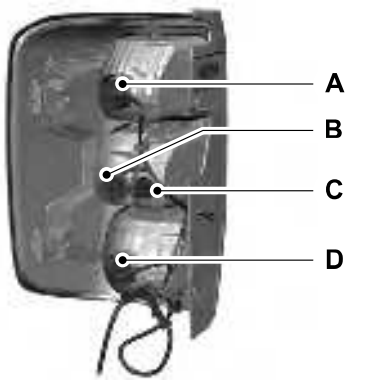
7. To install the bulb, reverse the removal steps.

CHANGING A FRONT FOG LAMP BULB

1. Make sure the fog lamps are off.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector from the fog lamp bulb.
3. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove it from the fog lamp.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

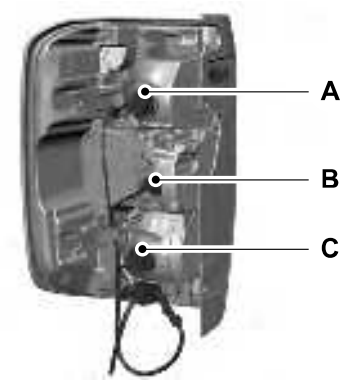
CHANGING A REAR LAMP BULB

Low Series



A	Tail lamp and stop lamp bulb.
B	Turn signal bulb.
C	Reverse bulb.
D	Rear Fog lamp bulb. (If Equipped)

Mid Series



A	Turn signal bulb.
B	Reverse bulb.
C	Rear Fog lamp bulb. (If Equipped)

1. Remove the rear lamp assembly. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 380).
2. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the rear lamp assembly.
3. Remove the bulb from the bulb socket.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

INTERIOR BULBS

INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

Note: *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

Note: *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

Note: *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below windshield.

Note: *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

Note: *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.*

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a 40º wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 305 mm (12 in) distance and 90º angle to your vehicle's surface.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 14,000 kPa (2,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 82ºC (179ºF).

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

Note: *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components and the complete underbody will require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in coastal areas, dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

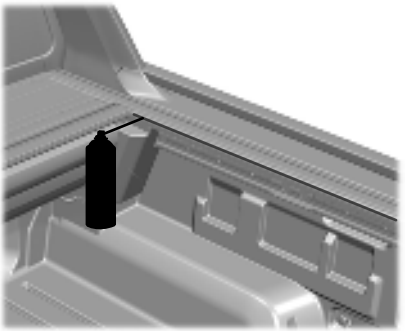
CLEANING THE ROLLER SHUTTER

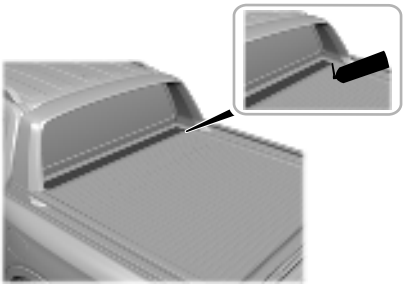
(If Equipped)

If normal operation slows, becomes noisy or the power roller shutter incorrectly bounces back during travel, follow the outlined maintenance recommendations. Regular maintenance improves the smooth and correct operation of the roller shutter.

We recommend that you clean and lubricate the roller shutter as follows:

- Clean the seals, profiles and side rails using a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap water solution.
- Thoroughly dry the roller shutter prior to application of the lubricant.
- Lubricate the side rails and both canister end panels of the roller shutter regularly with silicone spray for a minimum of 5 seconds using a straw applicator directed into the corners between the top cover and main curtain profiles.





Note: *Immediately after the lubricant has been applied, cycle the roller shutter open and closed as needed to help the lubricant spread throughout the system.*

Note: *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL

WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: *Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.*

CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

Note: *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

CLEANING FABRIC

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

CLEANING LEATHER

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING VINYL

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

CLEANING SEATBELTS

WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

Note: *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, the following maintenance recommendations ensures your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve your vehicle.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and weather damage.
- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m (25 ft) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.
- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear wheel housings and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Rewax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

12 Volt Battery

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally, we recommend disconnecting the 12v battery which will reduce system loads on the battery.
- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Note: *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so to reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Tires

Maintain recommended air pressure.

Note: *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.
- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check the underhood for any foreign materials such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign materials.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10-minute drive to reduce the corrosion from the brakes.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

The tire label or safety certification label is on the driver side B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. It contains information on the recommended front and rear tire inflation pressures.

USING SUMMER TIRES

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to about 7ºC (45ºF) or below, depending on tire wear and environmental conditions, or in snow and ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, we recommend using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above -7ºC (19ºF). The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below -7ºC (19ºF). If the tires have been subjected to -7ºC (19ºF) or less, warm them in a heated space to at least 5ºC (41ºF) for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the vehicle with the tires installed, or checking tire inflation. Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

WARNING: If you choose to install snow tires on your vehicle, they must be the same size, construction, and load range as the original tires listed on the tire placard, and they must be installed on all four wheels. Mixing tires of different size or construction on your vehicle can adversely affect your vehicle's handling and braking, and may lead to loss of vehicle control.

WARNING: Wheels and tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally fitted on the vehicle. Use of any other tire or wheel can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the recommended tire inflation pressures found on the Safety Compliance Certification label, or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, or personal injury or death.

Only use snow chains on rear wheels. Install snow chains in pairs. Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes. Only use S-class snow chains, 15mm chain links.

- 215/70R16 C
- 255/70R16
- 255/70R17
- 255/65R18
- 255/55R20

We recommend you use steel wheels of the same size and specification if snow chains are required because chains may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and traction devices:

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Purchase snow chains from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- When driving with snow chains do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the snow chains rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and tighten them. If this does not work, remove the snow chains to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the snow chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use snow chains on dry roads.
- If a temporary spare wheel is mounted on your vehicle, do not use snow chains on the axle with the temporary spare wheel.

Use snow chains that fit against the sidewall of the tire to prevent the chains from touching the wheel rims or suspension. Refer to the previous illustration.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains, contact your authorized dealer.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Check your tire pressure everyday before driving your vehicle.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 396).

INFLATING THE TIRES

WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven tread wear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door.

The recommended tire inflation pressure is also found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label, affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door latch post, or the door edge that meets the door latch on the B-pillar, or on the edge of the driver door.

Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven tread wear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

When temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 6ºC or 10ºF temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 7 kPa (1.0 psi) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressure frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS

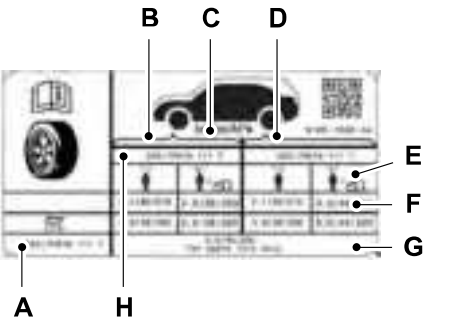
WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer.

Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are located on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures, including the spare, when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: *Remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.*



A Spare wheel tire size.
B Front tire pressure.
C Measure unit.
D Rear tire pressure.
E Vehicle load.
F Tire pressure.
G Spare wheel tire pressure.
H Tire size.

Tire Size	Normal Load		Eco		Full Load	Full Load
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
215/70R16 C 108/106 T	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	3.7 (54)
255/70R16 111 T	2.1 (30)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	3 (44)
255/70R17 112 T	2.1 (30)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	3 (44)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Eco		Full Load	Full Load
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
255/65R18 111 T	2.1 (30)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	3 (44)
255/65R18 111 H	2.1 (30)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	3 (44)
255/55R20 110 V	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	3 (44)

Note: *See the tire information label for applicable tire pressure and size.*

Eco tire pressures are recommended for optimal fuel consumption.

Snow chains can be fitted on all of the above sizes on the rear axle only.

INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR WEAR

When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves.

INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

WARNING: Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire dismounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall. If damage is observed or suspected, have the tire inspected by a tire professional.

Tire Wear

When the tread is worn down to 1/16 in (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in tread wear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread appear when the tread is worn down to 1/16 (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall. If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

Age

WARNING: Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

WARNING: In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

WARNING: You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

Safety Practices

WARNING: If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

WARNING: Do not spin the wheels at over 55 km/h (34 mph). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility that you could eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This could further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove the wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid tread wear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer.

INSPECTING THE WHEEL VALVE STEMS

Check the valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that could permit air leakage.

TIRE ROTATION

WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

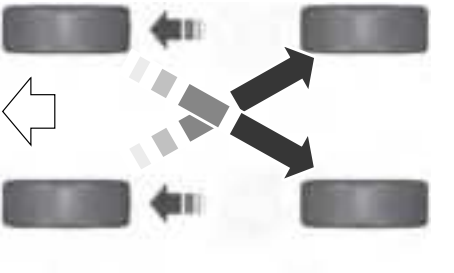
Note: *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

Note: *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Tire Rotation Diagram

Follow the diagram indicating the correct tire locations for rotating the tires.



Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.*

Note: *If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.*

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

When the outside temperature drops significantly, the tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp.

The warning lamp could also illuminate when you use a spare wheel, or tire sealant from the inflator kit.

Note: *Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.*

Note: *After you inflate the tires to the recommended pressure it could take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning indicator to turn off.*

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES

To view the current tire pressures, use the information display or touchscreen.

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle may require different tire pressures in the front compared to the rear. In these cases, the system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

If the tires are rotated, you need to reset the system in order to relearn the positions of the tire pressure sensors. The system cannot tell which position a tire pressure sensor is in, and assumes you have set the tire pressures correctly.

Performing the Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Navigate to the tire monitor menu in the information display. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages** (page 403).
3. Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears. If your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until a confirmation message appears.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS

The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Tyre pressure low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

If you get a flat tire when driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed, hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have the flat serviced by an authorized dealer to prevent damage to the system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions** (page 401). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the system sensor for damage.

Note: *The use of tire sealant could damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies.*

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on this vehicle.*

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

WARNING: If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

If the spare wheel is different from the other fitted road wheels, it may have a warning label with the appropriate maximum speed limit. Drive cautiously when using a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

Full-size Dissimilar Spare Wheel With a Label on the Wheel

The label on the wheel states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only. Drive the shortest distance possible and have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible. If the dissimilar spare wheel or tire is damaged, it must be replaced.

If you use a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, this can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All wheel driving capability.

When driving with this type of a dissimilar spare wheel:

- Do not exceed the maximum speed as shown on the label.
- Do not load your vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the safety compliance label.
- Do not tow a trailer.
- Do not use snow chains on the end of your vehicle with the dissimilar spare.
- Do not use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Do not use a commercial car wash.

Full-size Dissimilar Spare Wheel Without a Label on the Wheel

You can replace the existing road wheel with the spare and continue to drive in the normal manner.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Tire Change Procedure

WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

WARNING: Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Ensure screwthread is adequately lubricated before use.

WARNING: The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.

WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

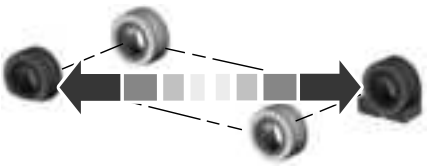
WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).

WARNING: It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

WARNING: Switch off the running boards before jacking or placing any object under your vehicle. Never place your hand between the extended running board and your vehicle. A moving running board may cause injury.

1. Park the vehicle on a level, firm surface and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Apply parking brake, turn the engine off and set up a warning triangle.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM



3. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.

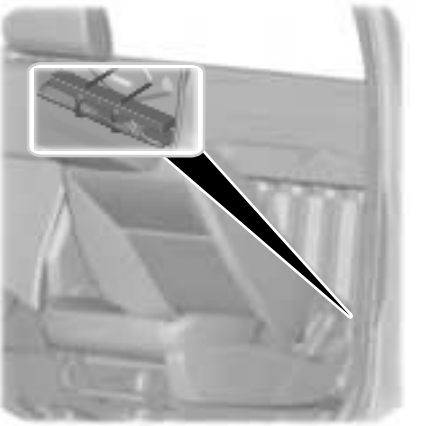
Note: *Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.*

Removing the Vehicle Jack and Tool Bag

The jack, wheel brace and jack handle are located in the cab.

Note: *Not all cab configurations are available in all markets.*

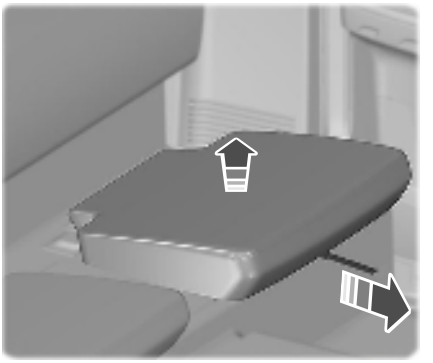
Single Cab



1. Fold the left-hand side seatback forward.
2. Remove the locking strap and remove the tools.

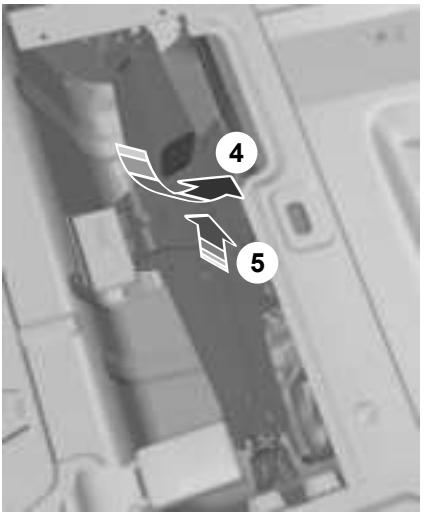
1. Fold the right-hand side seatback forward.
2. Loosen the jack, remove the bolt and remove the jack.

Super Cab



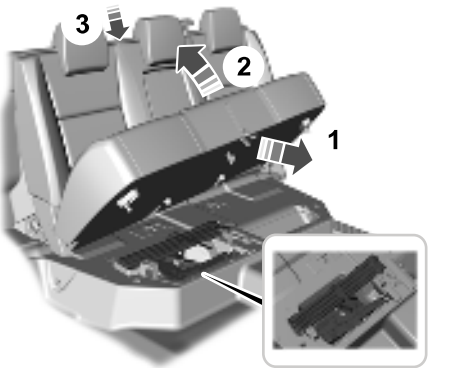
1. Pull the release strap.
2. Remove the rear seats.

3. Remove the cover.



4. Remove the bolt and turn the lead screw on the end counterclockwise to unwind.
5. Remove the jack.
6. Remove the tools.

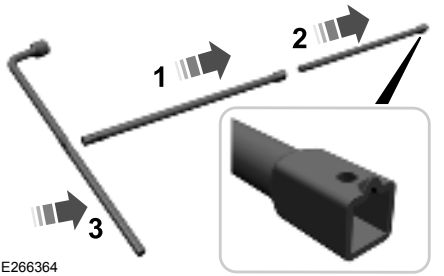
Double Cab



1. Pull the release strap out.
2. Lift the seat cushion up.
3. Use the tether strap to secure the seat cushion.
4. Remove the locking strap.
5. Remove the jack and tools

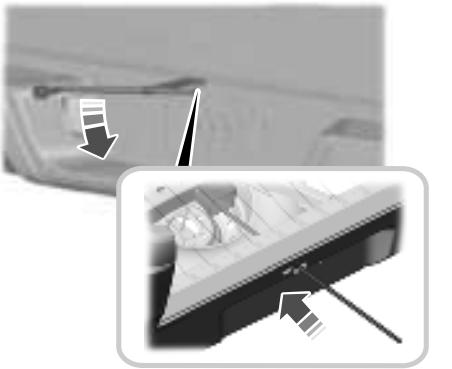
Removing the Spare Tire

WARNING: If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

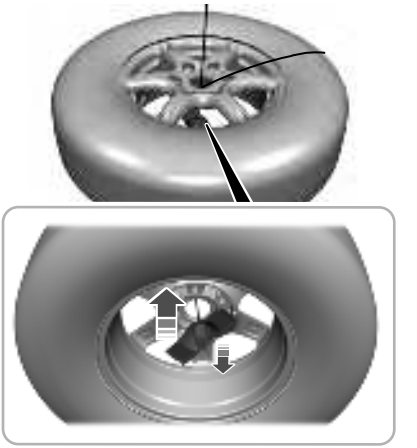


1. Assemble the handle.

2. If there is a spare wheel lock on the vehicle, find the spare wheel lock key in the glove box and attach the key on the front end of the jack tool.

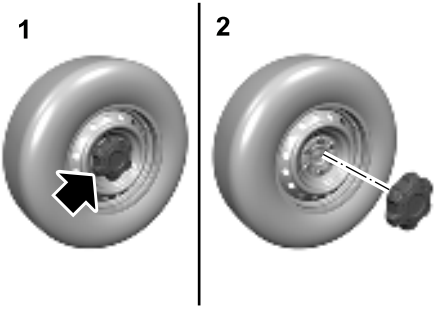


3. Insert the jack handle into the guide hole. Turn counterclockwise until the wheel rests on the ground, and there is slack in the cable.



4. Pass the bracket and cable through the wheel opening.

5. If there is a winch cable guard on the vehicle, remove the winch cable guard by pulling off the entire metal plate with inserts clips, no need to remove the insert clips separately.



6. Vehicles with steel wheels, remove the center cap by pulling off or using an object to pry the cover off. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

7. Vehicles with aluminum wheels, loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

Note: *If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, drive the shortest distance possible.*

Note: *Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.*

Note: *Using a dissimilar spare wheel or tire at any one wheel location can compromise the handling, stability and braking performance, comfort and noise.*

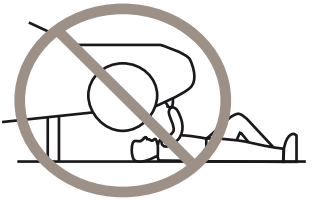
Note: *When driving with a spare tire, do not switch on four-wheel drive mode unless you need to get your vehicle unstuck.*

Note: *The spare wheel is located underneath the rear of the vehicle.*

Note: *Do not use power tools on the spare wheel winch input drive.*

Removing a Road Wheel

WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

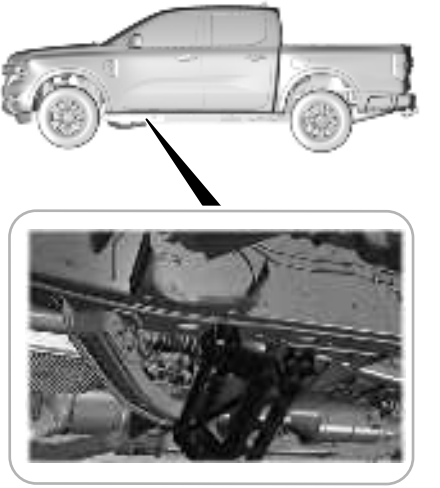


Note: *No maintenance or additional lubrication of your jack should be required over the service life of your vehicle.*

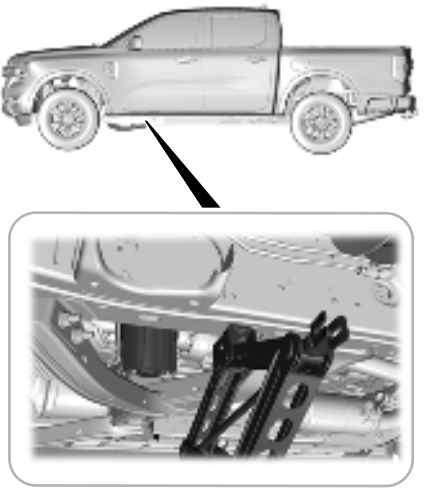
Note: *Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.*

Note: *Only use the jack on the specified jacking points and as close to the affected wheel as possible.*

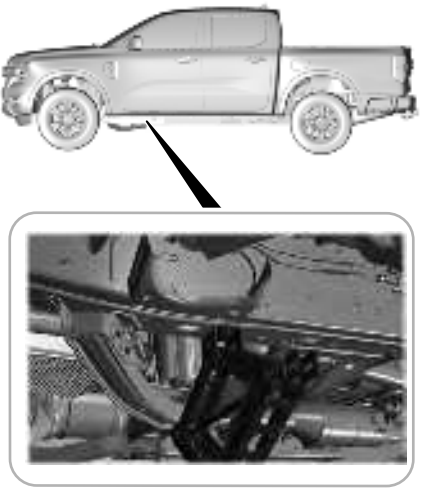
Front Jacking Points Without Fuel Filter



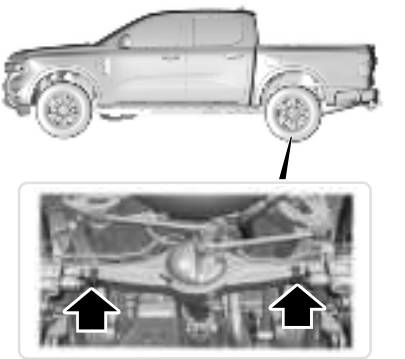
Front Jacking Points With Fuel Filter With High-Rider



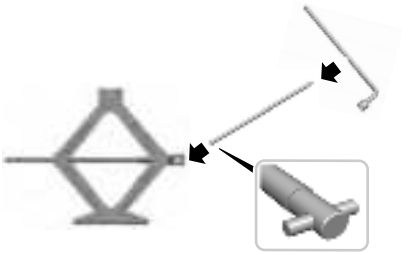
Front Jacking Points With Fuel Filter With Low-Rider



Rear Jacking Points



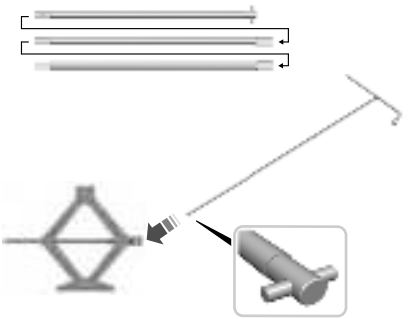
1. Place the vehicle jack at the jacking point next to the tire you are changing.



Note: *When you are changing the front flat tire, connect the jack handle to the jack. Operate the jack handle with the lug nut wrench.*

2. Assemble the jack handle, including the required extension tubes depending on the position you are jacking, and turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground.

Note: *When changing the rear flat tire, connect all the handles together to extend the jack handle.*



3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Use the locking wheel nut key to loosen the locking wheel nut.
5. Remove the lug nuts and the road wheel.

Installing a Road Wheel

WARNING: Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. See an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.

WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

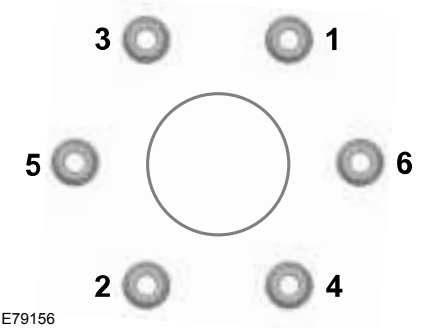
WARNING: Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

WARNING: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.*

Note: *Make sure the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.*

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts and finger tighten.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.



E79156

4. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
5. Fully tighten all of the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Wheel Nuts** (page 414).

Stowing the Flat or Spare Tire

1. If there is a winch cable guard on the vehicle, align the insert clips on the winch cable guard to the wheel nut holes, then push the metal plate until it's fully attached to the back side of the wheel.
2. Lay the tire on the ground, near the rear of the vehicle, with the valve stem side facing up.
3. Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer and tether through the wheel center. If equipped, you may have to remove the wheel center cap prior to pushing the retainer through the center of the wheel. To remove the center cap, press it off with the jack tool from the inner side of the wheel. Pull on the cable to align the components at the end of the cable.
4. Insert the handle into the guide hole and engage the winch.

Note: *If there is a spare wheel lock on the vehicle, find the spare wheel lock key in the glove box and attach the key on the front end of the jack tool.*

5. Turn the swivel wrench clockwise until the tire is raised to its stowed position underneath the vehicle. The wrench becomes harder to turn and the spare tire winch ratchets or slips when the tire is raised to its maximum tightness. A clicking sound is heard from the winch indicating the tire is properly stowed.
6. Carefully place all tools back to the tool kit bag.
7. Reinstall the tool kit bag in the original position.
8. Reinstall the jack properly on the bracket and secure the wing nut.
9. Unblock the wheel. Place the warning triangle back in the vehicle.

Note: *Do not use power tools on the spare wheel winch input drive.*

Note: *Only use the spare tire carrier to stow the tire and wheel combination provided with your vehicle. Other tire and wheel combinations can cause the tire carrier to fail.*

WHEEL NUTS

WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Bolt Size	Nm (lb.ft) [1]
M12 x 1.5	135 Nm (100 lb.ft)

[1] Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only our recommended replacement wheel nuts and or wheel bolts.

Retighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque within 160 km (100 mi) after any wheel disturbance, such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire or wheel removal.

A Hub pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot hole and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

Locking Wheel Nuts (If Equipped)

The locking wheel nut key is located in the glove box or next to the vehicle jack.

You can obtain replacement locking wheel nuts or a locking wheel nut key using the reference number certificate.

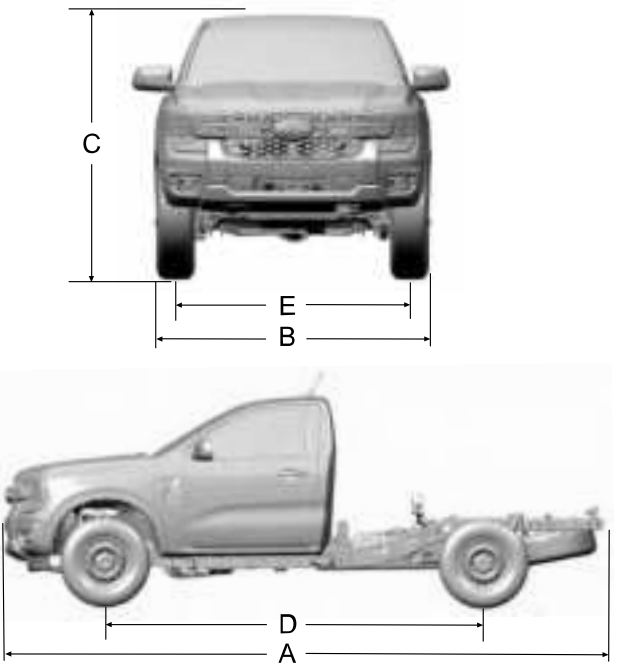
ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L DIESEL

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio - single turbo.	16.3:1
Compression ratio - Bi turbo.	15.8:1
Displacement.	1.996 L (121.8 in^3)
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Ignition system.	Diesel Compression Ignition
Required fuel.	Diesel

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 3.0L DIESEL

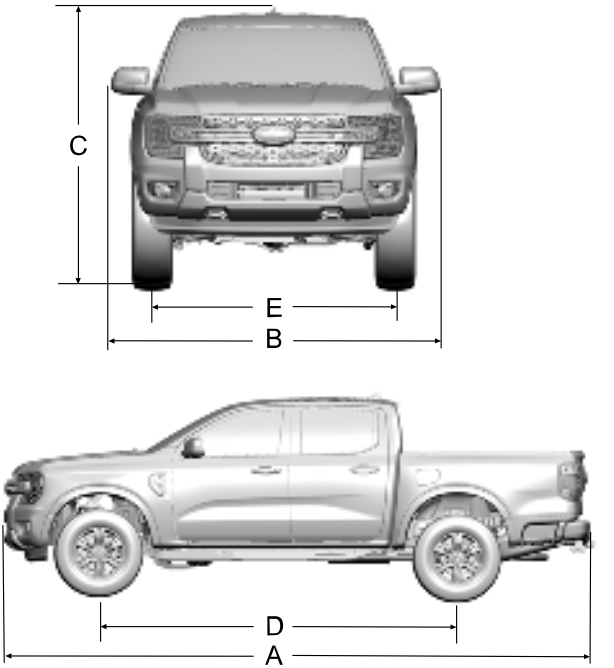
Engine	Specification
Compression ratio.	16:1
Displacement.	2.99 L (182.5 in^3)
Firing order.	1-4-2-5-3-6
Ignition system.	Diesel Compression Ignition
Required fuel.	Diesel

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - CHASSIS CAB



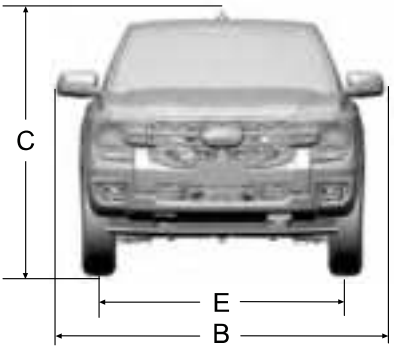
Callout	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Maximum length.	5,225 mm (205.7 in)
B	Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,014 mm (79.3 in)
C	Overall height.	1,884 mm (74.2 in)
D	Wheelbase.	3,270 mm (128.7 in)
E	Track width.	1,620 mm (64 in)

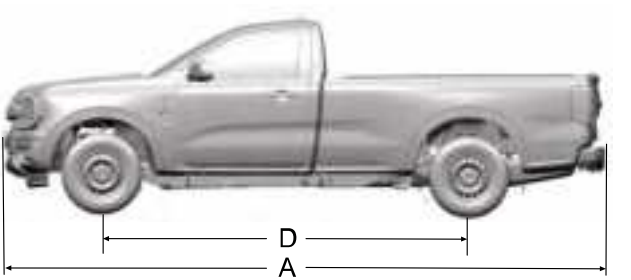
VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - DOUBLE CAB



Callout	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Maximum length.	5,370 mm (211.4 in)
B	Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,208 mm (86.9 in)
C	Overall height.	1,886 mm (74.3 in)
D	Wheelbase.	3,270 mm (128.7 in)
E	Track width.	1,620 mm (64 in)

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - SINGLE CAB

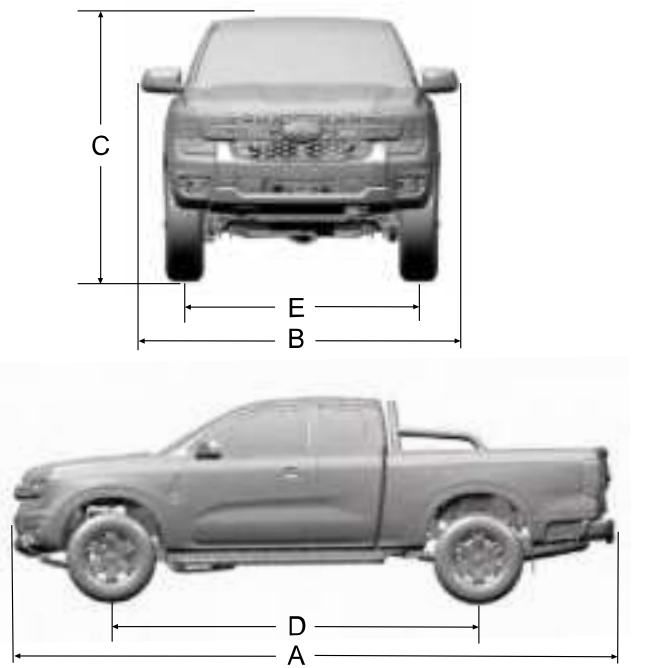




Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Callout	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Maximum length	5,370 mm (211.4 in)
B	Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,208 mm (86.9 in)
C	Overall height.	1,884 mm (74.2 in)
D	Wheelbase.	3,270 mm (128.7 in)
E	Track width.	1,620 mm (64 in)

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - SUPERCAB



Callout	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Maximum length including license plate and bracket.	5,370 mm (211.4 in)
B	Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,208 mm (86.9 in)
C	Mass in running order overall height.	1,874 mm (73.8 in)
D	Wheelbase.	3,270 mm (128.7 in)
E	Front track.	1,560 mm (61 in)

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 3.0L DIESEL

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO_2 Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
12.5-13.1	10.3-10.7	8.6-9.0	10.1-10.6	10.0-10.4	262-273

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 2.0L DIESEL

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO_2 Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
8.6-14.3	7.7-11.2	7.2-11.0	9.0-15.2	8.2-13.0	215-340

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L DIESEL

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	8.1 L (1.78 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-D

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C913-D, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-30 engine oil defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: *Do not use more than 1 L (0.22 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 3.0L DIESEL

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oil of the recommended viscosity grade that meet the requirements for ACEA A5/B5.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	8.9 L (9.4 qt)

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-D

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C913-D, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-30 engine oil defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: *Do not use more than 1 L (0.22 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L DIESEL

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could reduce vehicle performance or cause component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Bi-turbo vehicles without engine heater.	9 L (1.98 gal)
Single turbo automatic transmission vehicles without engine heater	8.4 L (1.85 gal)
Single turbo manual transmission vehicles without engine heater	8 L (1.76 gal)
Vehicles with engine heater.	9.6 L (2.11 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B57-A2

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WSS-M97B57-A2 is yellow coolant. Yellow coolant may appear fluorescent green in some cooling systems which is a normal characteristic.

Note: *Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. This reduces the effectiveness of the coolants and could void the warranty.*

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 3.0L DIESEL

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	10 L (10.6 qt)

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B57-A2

WSS-M97B57-A2 is yellow coolant. Yellow coolant may appear fluorescent green in some cooling systems which is a normal characteristic.

Note: *Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. This reduces the effectiveness of the coolants and could void the warranty.*

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	80 L (17.60 gal)

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L DIESEL

WARNING: The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant Type	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
2.0L Single Turbo	R1234YF	0.51 ± 0.025 kg (1.124 ± 0.055 lb)	100 ml (3.38 fl oz)
2.0L Bi-Turbo	R1234YF	0.575 ± 0.025 kg (1.268 ± 0.055 lb)	130 ml (4.40 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-12 FU7J-M2C300-AA	WSS-M2C300-A2

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 3.0L DIESEL

WARNING: The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Use refrigerant and oil that meets the defined specifications.

If you do not use refrigerant and oil that meets the defined specifications, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Refrigerant Type	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
R1234YF	0.575 ± 0.025 kg (1.268 ± 0.055 lb)	130 ml (4.40 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-12 FU7J-M2C300-AA	WSS-M2C300-A2

WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash - Winter Premium FU7J-19C544-AA/BA	WSS-M8B18-A2

ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	19.3 L (4.25 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
AdBlue® HAMJ-M99C130-xx	WSS-M99C130-A

Note: *ADBLUE is only for engines with Selective Catalytic Reduction System.*

MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
5-Speed	2 L (2.1 qt) [1]
6-Speed	2.4 L (2.5 qt) [1]

[1] Approximate total oil volume/capacity. Actual amount could vary between fluid changes.

Note: *Transmission Oil is "filled-for-life" – No requirement to Service the transmission oil.*

Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Fluid 75W MX KU7J-M2C955-AA	WSS-M2C955-A1

CLUTCH FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.

Note: *Only use MERCON ULV transmission fluid for automatic transmissions that require MERCON ULV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid could cause transmission damage.*

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
10R80: Level 4-5 on dipstick.	12 L (12.7 qt) [1]
10R60: Level 3-4 on dipstick.	12.39 L (13.09 qt) [1]

[1] Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Oil P-ULV HU7J-M2C949-AA	WSS-M2C949-A, MERCON® ULV

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
6R80: Level to left side fill plug	11.47 L (12.12 qt) [1]

[1] Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Oil C-ML5 7U7J-M2C938-AB	WSS-M2C938-AMERCON® LV,

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced brake performance.

Note: *We recommend you use Dot 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 specifications or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. If you use any fluid other than the recommended fluid, it could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

TRANSFER CASE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Four-wheel drive (Electronic shift on the Fly).	1.2 L (1.3 qt)
Automatic four-wheel drive.	1.55 L (1.6 qt)

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Oil C-ML5 7U7J-M2C938-AB	WSS-M2C938-AMERCON® LV,

FRONT AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Without electronic locking differential and without front axle disconnect.	705 ± 25 ml (23.8 ± 0.8 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Rear Axle Oil SAE 80W-90 C2 4U7J-M2C197-BA	WSP-M2C197-A

REAR AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Specification	Quantity
Standard axle high ride.	80W90	1.6 ± 0.03 L (55 ± 0 fl oz)
Standard axle low ride.	80W90	1.19 ± 0.03 L (40 ± 0 fl oz)
Locking axle high ride.	80W90	1.54 ± 0.03 L (50 ± 0 fl oz)

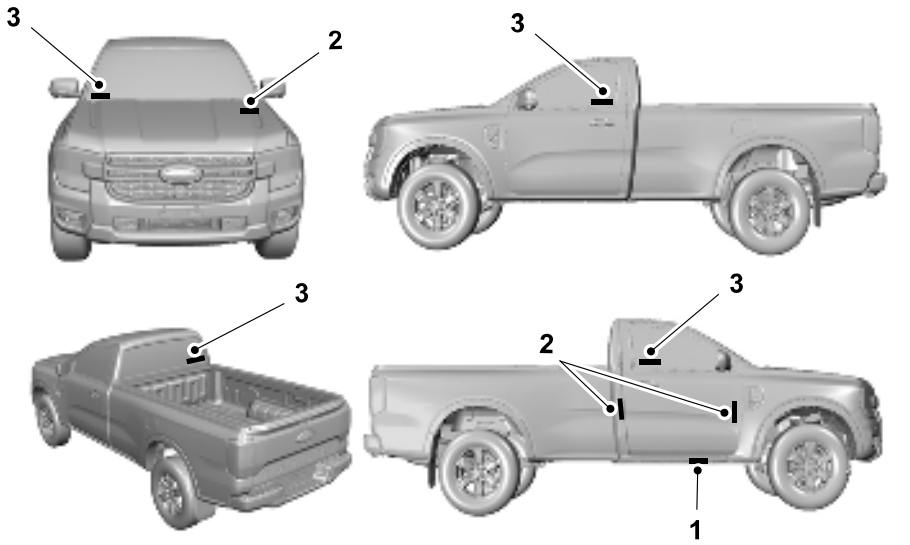
Materials

Name	Specification
Rear Axle Oil SAE 80W-90 C2 4U7J-M2C197-BA	WSP-M2C197-A

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

Single Cab



1 Main vehicle identification number engraving – Chassis side member, right side.

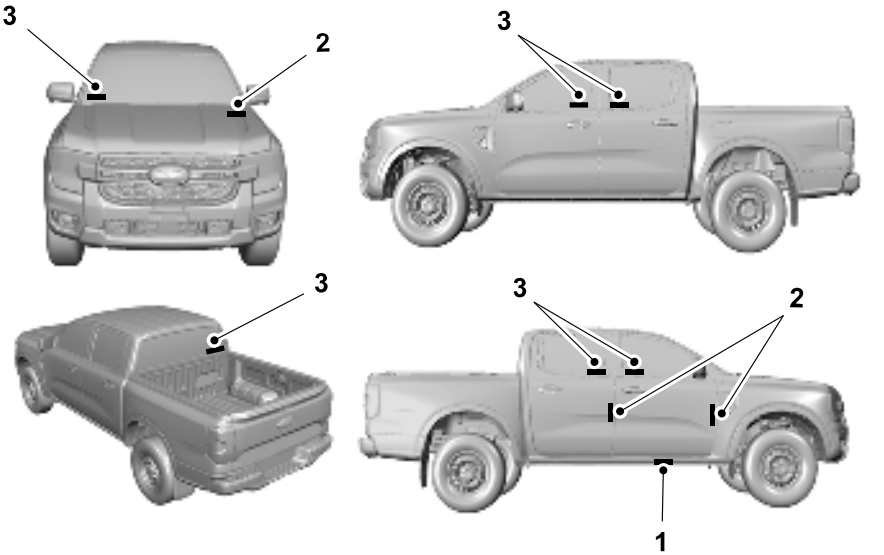
2 Vehicle identifier section adhesive label - Inside engine compartment, left side. A or B-pillar, right side. On the floor under the driver seat.

3 Vehicle identifier section engraving in glass - Windshield, door windows and rear window.

Note: *The adhesive labels and glass engraving have the eight vehicle identifier section characters.*

Note: *Location of labels are dependent upon market requirements.*

Double Cab



1 Main vehicle identification number engraving – Chassis side member, right side.

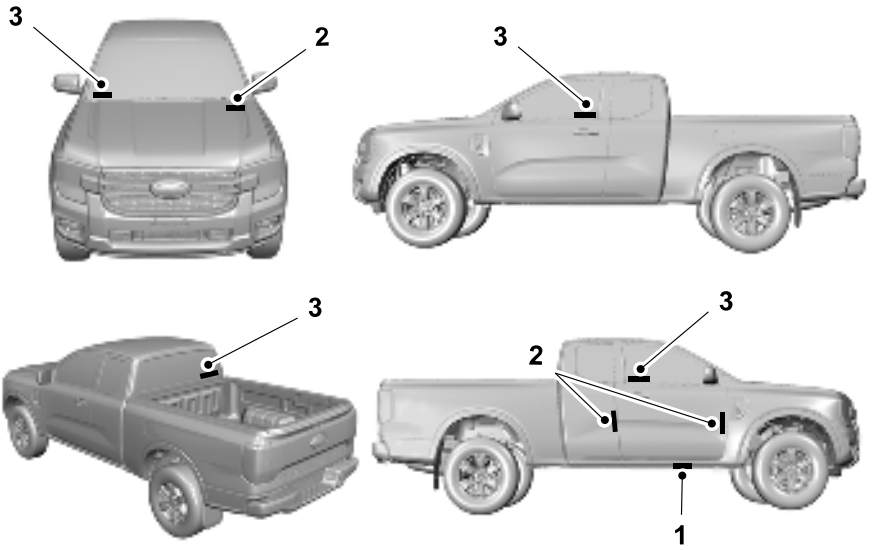
2 Vehicle identifier section adhesive label - Inside engine compartment, left side. A or B-pillar, right side. On the floor under the driver seat.

3 Vehicle identifier section engraving in glass - Windshield, door windows and rear window.

Note: *The adhesive labels and glass engraving have the eight vehicle identifier section characters.*

Note: *Location of labels are dependent upon market requirements.*

RAP Cab



1 Main vehicle identification number engraving – Chassis side member, right side.

2 Vehicle identifier section adhesive label - Inside engine compartment, left side. A or B-pillar, right side. On the floor under the driver seat.

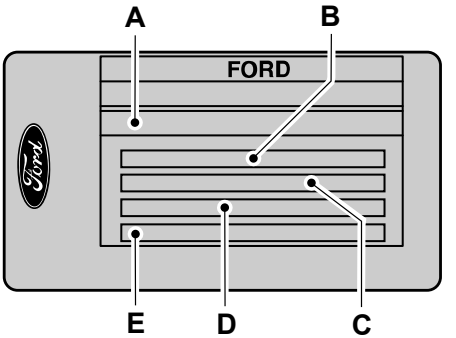
3 Vehicle identifier section engraving in glass - Windshield, door windows and rear window.

Note: *The adhesive labels and glass engraving have the eight vehicle identifier section characters.*

Note: *Location of labels are dependent upon market requirements.*

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



E85610

A Vehicle identification number.
B Gross vehicle weight.
C Gross train weight.
D Maximum front axle weight.
E Maximum rear axle weight.

The vehicle identification plate with your vehicle identification number and maximum weights is located on the bottom of the lock side of the passenger door aperture.

Note: *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

Note: *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

WHAT IS THE MODEM

The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

Tap the vehicle drawer on the top left of the screen.

1. Press ***Connectivity***.
2. Press ***Connected Vehicle Features***.
3. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

Access the application drawer on the touchscreen.

1. Press ***Connectivity***.
2. Press ***Manage Wi-Fi Networks***.
3. Switch ***Wi-Fi*** on.
4. Press ***View available networks***.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: *Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.*

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: MODEM

Why can I not confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT (IF EQUIPPED)

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

Tap the vehicle drawer on the top left of the screen.

1. Press ***Vehicle Hotspot***.

Note: *The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.*

2. Press Settings under the Vehicle Hotspot menu.
3. Press ***Edit***.
4. Switch the Wi-Fi Visibility option on or off.

Note: *The Wi-Fi visibility default setting is on.*

Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

Tap the vehicle drawer on the top left of the screen.

1. Press ***Vehicle Hotspot***.
2. Press Settings under the Vehicle Hotspot menu.

Note: *The network name is the hotspot name.*

3. Switch the Show Password option on or off.

Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, switch Wi-Fi on and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

Note: *The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.*

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

Note: *Secure websites do not redirect.*

3. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan.

Note: *If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.*

Note: *If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.*

Note: *If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.*

Note: *The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.*

CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD (IF EQUIPPED)

Tap the vehicle drawer on the top left of the screen.

1. Press ***Vehicle Hotspot***.
2. Press Settings under the Vehicle Hotspot menu.
3. Press ***Edit***.
4. Press ***Change Network Name***.
5. Enter your required network name.
6. Press enter to save the network name.
7. Press ***Change password***.

8. Enter your required password.
9. Press enter to save the password.

Changing the Wi-Fi Hotspot Frequency

Note: *The vehicle hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You will not be able to connect your device to the vehicle hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.*

Tap the vehicle drawer on the top left of the screen.

1. Press ***Vehicle Hotspot***.
2. Press Settings under the Vehicle Hotspot menu.
3. Press ***Edit***.
4. Select a frequency.

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – TROUBLESHOOTING

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

(If Equipped)

Why can I not see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?

- Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.
- The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF

Press the button on the volume control.

SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Press your preferred audio source.

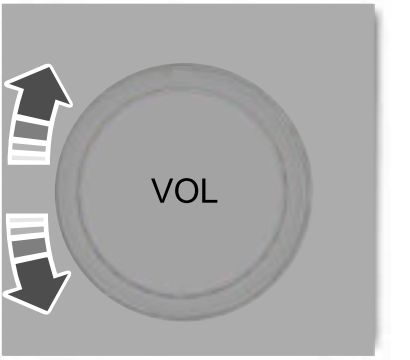
Note: *Available audio sources are listed along the top of the radio screen.*

PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE

Press to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

Note: *Not all sources can be paused.*

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

Using the Steering Wheel

Press the buttons to adjust the volume.

SWITCHING SHUFFLE MODE ON AND OFF

Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

Note: *Not all sources have shuffle mode.*

SWITCHING REPEAT MODE ON AND OFF

Press the button on the touchscreen to switch repeat mode on or off.

Note: *Not all sources have repeat mode.*

SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

1. Select a station.
2. Press and hold a memory preset button on the touchscreen.

Note: *The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the preset and returns once stored.*

Note: *You can save presets from multiple radio bands to the memory preset bar.*

ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

Balance and Fade (If Equipped)

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Sound***.
4. Press ***Balance/Fade***.
5. Press the arrows to adjust the settings.

Tone Settings

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Sound***.
4. Press ***Tone Settings***.
5. Use the slider bar to adjust the settings.

Speed Compensated Volume

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Sound***.
4. Press ***Adaptive Volume***.
5. Press a setting.

Occupancy Mode (If Equipped)

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Sound***.
4. Press ***DSP Occupancy***.
5. Press a setting.

Sound Mode (If Equipped)

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Sound***.
4. Press ***Sound mode***.
5. Press a setting.

SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Clock***.
4. Set the time.

Note: *The **AM** and **PM** options are not available if **24-hour mode** is on.*

5. Press the arrows to adjust the settings.

Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Clock***.
4. Switch ***Automatic time zone update*** on or off.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

AM/FM RADIO (IF EQUIPPED)

AM/FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

SELECTING AN AM/FM RADIO STATION

Manually Selecting a Radio Station

Press the button on the radio tuner to go up the frequency band.

Press the button on the radio tuner to go down the frequency band.

Using Seek

Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.

Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Using the Station List

1. Press the search button on the radio screen.
2. Press a radio station from the list.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

Note: *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

WHAT IS SERVICE LINKING

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system switches to the corresponding FM radio station if one is available.

SWITCHING SERVICE LINKING ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Radio***.
4. Switch ***DAB servicelink*** on or off.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION

Manually Selecting a Radio Station

Press the button on the radio tuner to go up the frequency band.

Press the button on the radio tuner to go down the frequency band.

Using Seek

Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.

Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Selecting a Radio Station From a List

1. Press the search button on the radio screen.
2. Press a radio station from the list.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO SETTINGS

Slideshow

When switched on and available, the touchscreen displays supplied pictures in place of the station logo. The pictures can be enlarged by touching them.

Electronic Program Guide

When enabled and available, the touchscreen displays what is currently playing and what plays next on the selected station.

Station Logo

When switched on and available, the touchscreen displays the current FM or DAB station logo.

News Announcements

When switched on, the current playing audio source may be interrupted by news announcements. An icon on the radio screen indicates when news announcements are enabled. An icon in the status bar indicates when an announcement is active.

Regional

When switched on, the radio stays tuned to the selected FM or DAB regional station. When switched off, the radio may tune to a regional alternative of the station depending on reception.

Station List Order

Allows you to order the DAB station list by name or network.

TRAFFIC ANNOUNCEMENTS

SWITCHING TRAFFIC ANNOUNCEMENTS ON AND OFF

Press the button on the radio screen.

When switched on, the current playing audio source may be interrupted by traffic announcements. An icon on the radio screen indicates when announcements are enabled. An icon in the status bar indicates when an announcement is active.

CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, some features are not available while the vehicle is in motion at or above 8 km/h (5 mph). Settings that are not critical while driving your vehicle are shown as restricted on your display. Some of these settings include:

- Software updates.
- Personal profiles setup.
- Valet mode setup.
- Driver assistance settings.
- MyKey setup.
- Door keypad code setup.

These restricted features become available when your vehicle is no longer in motion.

STATUS BAR

The bar is on top of the display and indicates the status of your vehicle's features. It also contains the Vehicle and Application drawers. See **Accessing Feature Drawers** (page 449).

Status Area

The status area is on the right side of the status bar and provides information about vehicle features.

Audio System

Audio system muted.

Connected Device

Cell phone microphone muted.

Phone call in progress.

Media player connected.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Cell phone network signal strength.

Cell phone roaming.

Text message received.

Unread email message.

Automatic crash notification system off.

Cell phone battery status.

Vehicle Data

Wi-Fi available.

Wi-Fi connected.

Vehicle data sharing on.

Vehicle data sharing off.

Vehicle location sharing on.

Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

Wireless Accessory Charger

Wireless accessory charger active.

Action Area

The action area is on the left side of the display and contains status updates that require your action. Tap the icons in the action area to learn more about them.

Vehicle System Update

Vehicle system update available.

Vehicle system update requires schedule.

Vehicle system update requires consent.

Vehicle system update requires Wi-Fi.

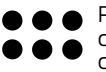
Vehicle system update schedule reminder.

Vehicle system update not successful.

Vehicle system update successful.

ACCESSING FEATURE DRAWERS

Application Drawer


Press the button to open and close the application drawer. It contains system and connected device applications.

Note: *The icon may change depending on your personalization settings.*

Vehicle Drawer

Press the button to open and close the vehicle drawer. It contains vehicle feature settings.

REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and volume down button for 10 seconds.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

WHAT IS VOICE INTERACTION

Voice Interaction allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

SETTING THE WAKE WORD

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press the **Voice Assistant**.
4. Press ***Preferred Wake Word***.
5. Select a wake word.

BEGINNING A VOICE INTERACTION

Say the selected wake word.

Press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel.

VOICE INTERACTION EXAMPLES

General Examples

Command	Result
Start Over.	The system resets the current voice interaction.
Cancel.	The system ends the current voice interaction.
Next Page.	The system goes to the next page.
Previous Page.	The system goes to the previous page.
Help.	The system displays a list of available commands you can use on the current screen.

Entertainment Examples

Command	Result
Play The Beatles.	The system plays music by the selected artist.
Show music by The Beatles.	The system shows music by the selected artist.
Set the station to 101.9 FM.	The system tunes the radio to 101.9 FM.
Set the station to BBC Radio 1.	The system tunes the radio to BBC Radio 1.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Climate Examples

Command	Result
I am cold.	The system prompts you to change the temperature.
Set the temperature to 22ºC (72ºF).	The system sets the temperature to 22ºC (72ºF).

Phone Examples

Command	Result
Call Henry.	The system calls Henry using your connected device.
Dial (phone number).	The system dials the selected phone number.
Send a text message to Henry.	The system begins a dictated text message.
Read my message from Henry.	The system reads you the most recent message from Henry.

Apps Examples

Command	Result
Mobile Apps.	The system prompts you to say the name of an app to start it on the system.
List Mobile Apps.	The system will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find Mobile Apps	The system will search and connect to compatible app running on your mobile device.

Navigation Examples

Command	Result
Drive to 1 Main Street in London England.	The system begins guided navigation to the address.
Show me directions to the Eiffel Tower.	The system shows directions to the selected POI.
Show me directions to Garden Street and School Street.	The system shows directions to the selected intersection.
Cancel route.	The system ends guided navigation to the destination.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

PHONE PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

Connecting your phone stores contact and call data on your vehicle. This data is used to provide intelligent suggestions. You can switch this off in the touchscreen settings menu.

Note: *Unpairing your phone removes the contact and call data from your vehicle and stops intelligent call suggestions.*

Go to the settings menu on your device and switch ***Bluetooth***® on.

Select the phone option in the feature drawer.

1. Select ***Pair phone***.
2. Follow the instructions on the screen to pair your device.

PHONE MENU

Press to view your favorite contacts.

Press to view your recent calls.

Press to view your contacts

Press to use the phone keypad.

Press to display recent text messages.

Press to view recent emails.

Press the down arrow to view additional items for a connected device.

Press to begin a voice interaction.

Press to switch to a different connected device.

Press to mute notifications.

Press to access phone settings.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

Making Calls

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call list	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favourites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: *You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Item	
End call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.

Item	
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Hndsfree off	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

SENDING AND RECEIVING A TEXT MESSAGE

Menu Item	Description
Hear it	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

The settings on your device must be enabled to receive text message notifications on the center display. Check your device settings to enable these features.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure ***Bluetooth®*** is enabled on your device.
2. Access the vehicle drawer.
3. Press ***Connectivity***.
4. Press ***Bluetooth***.
5. Switch ***Bluetooth*** on.
6. Press ***Add a Bluetooth Device***.

Note: *A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.*

7. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: *A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.*

8. Confirm that the PIN (personal identification number) on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: *The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.*

The ***Bluetooth®*** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by ***Bluetooth SIG, Inc.*** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device.

Press the button on the status bar to open the application drawer.

Press the ***Bluetooth®*** option.

Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.

Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.

Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

Browsing your Media Library

When a compatible mobile device is connected to the vehicle, your media library will be accessible through the touchscreen. From the touchscreen, you can browse through songs, albums, artists, and playlists on your mobile device.

Note: *This feature is dependent on the connected mobile device and the media application used.*

Note: *Browse feature functionality may be limited while driving.*

APP PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

ACCESSING APPS

Press the button to open the application drawer.

Application Area

This is the main app area where apps are launched and you can utilize the full functionality of the chosen app.

Card Area

Here you can see recently used applications with limited content. When you select one of these cards, the app will display in the application area with full functionality.

ENABLING APPS ON AN IOS DEVICE

Select the apps option in the feature drawer.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Apple CarPlay off.
2. Connect your device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.
3. If prompted to enable CarPlay, select Disable.
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

Note: *If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.*

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: *Connect your device to a USB port if you want to use a navigation app. When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.*

ENABLING APPS ON AN ANDROID DEVICE

Select the apps option in the feature drawer.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Android Auto off.
2. Pair your device.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

Note: *If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.*

4. Select ***Find mobile apps***.

Note: *The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.*

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

1. Pair your device.
2. Select the vehicle drawer on the status bar.
3. Select the phone list.
4. Select your device.
5. Select the connect option.
6. Switch Apple Car Play on or off.

SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO ON AND OFF

1. Pair your device.
2. Select the vehicle drawer on the status bar.
3. Select the phone list.
4. Select your device.
5. Select the connect option.
6. Switch Android Auto on or off.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

CONNECTED NAVIGATION (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with connected navigation. Depending on your version, you are given a 90 day or 3 year trial. After the trial period, you need to sign up to continue the experience. For additional information, visit *ford.com/connectedservices*.

Note: *If you do not sign up or renew your subscription, you can still use navigation through a connected device.*

ACCESSING NAVIGATION

1. Access the application drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press the navigation button.

Note: *As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.*

NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update your Map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. For USB updates and other details, contact an authorized Ford dealer.

Note: *If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to www.here.com/mapcreator.*

ADJUSTING THE MAP

ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP

Press the map format button on the left side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

LIVE TRAFFIC

WHAT IS LIVE TRAFFIC

You can observe real-time road congestion when live traffic is on.

SWITCHING LIVE TRAFFIC ON AND OFF

1. Press the tools button on the map screen.
2. Press Navigation Settings.
3. Press the Traffic button.
4. Switch Traffic on or off.

SETTING A DESTINATION

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
3. Select a destination from the list.
4. Press Go! to begin navigation.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

Press on the map to trigger the roaming and viewing screen. Press on the map again to place a pin at that location. Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen. Press the Go! button to begin navigation to the pin.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Switching Predictive Destinations On and Off

You can switch Destination Suggestions on and off under the User Data section in the navigation settings menu.

Setting a Destination

Access the feature bar using the touchscreen and select the predicted destination at the top of the screen. You can access additional predictive destinations by pressing the search bar on the map screen and then pressing the myTrends button.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press the search bar on the map screen.
2. Press Recents.
3. Select a destination from the list.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press the search bar.
2. Press favorites.
3. Select a saved destination.

Note: *Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.*

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

Press on a point of interest icon on the map. Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen. Press the Go! button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

WAYPOINTS

ADDING A WAYPOINT

1. Begin navigation to a destination.
2. Search for your waypoint using the search bar.
3. Press Go!
4. Press Add to add the waypoint to your trip.

EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the search bar on the map screen.
2. Press myTrips.
3. Press Current Trip.
4. Use the menu to add destinations, remove destinations, or rearrange destinations.

ROUTE GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the turn indicator to hear the last voice instruction.

CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE

Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

TRAILER TOWING NAVIGATION (IF EQUIPPED)

When you have an active subscription and Trailer Towing Navigation is switched on, the system will calculate the best route for trailer towing by avoiding dangerous road conditions based on the dimensions of your trailer.

Switching Trailer Towing Navigation On and Off

1. Press the **Navigation** button on the feature bar.
2. Press the **Menu** button.
3. Press **Trailer Routing**.
4. Switch **Trailer-optimized Routing** on or off.

Entering Trailer Dimensions

1. Press the **Navigation** button on the feature bar.
2. Press the **Menu** button.
3. Press **Trailer Routing**.
4. Press **Towing Menu**.
5. Press **Add Trailer**.
6. Follow the instructions on the screen to enter the type and dimensions of the trailer into the system.

Navigation Alerts

Alerts will appear on the navigation map while driving. An orange alert triangle indicates you should proceed with caution. When not following active guidance to a destination, a red alert triangle may appear and indicates you should avoid the road and find a detour.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 438). See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 438).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours. Check your touchscreen or connected device for the most accurate estimated update time.

You are notified of the status of the vehicle software update in the touchscreen and on your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 464).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Lock, unlock or enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
  - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Start your vehicle.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Use the alarm, central locks or door tones.
- Use the electronic door locks.
- Charge your vehicle.
  - Charging resumes once the update completes.

SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS

To access the Software Updates menu:

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***Software Updates***.

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.

Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Switching Automatic Updates On and Off

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we do not recommend switching Automatic Updates off.

Note: *Software updates require approval to download or install with Automatic Updates switched off.*

Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press ***Schedule Updates***.
2. Select the days and time for updates.
3. Press ***Save***.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle, such as overnight.

Some updates require your vehicle to be switched off.

Note: *The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.*

Installing Software Updates

Using the Status Bar

1. Press a Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press ***Update Details***.
2. Press ***Update Now***.

Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press ***Update Details***.

SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

Vehicle software update available.

Vehicle software update requires schedule.

Vehicle software update requires consent.

Vehicle software update requires Wi-Fi or has lost Wi-Fi connection.

Vehicle software update schedule reminder.

Vehicle software update not successful.

Vehicle software update successful.

Vehicle software update scheduled within one week.

PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

Performing a system reset allows you to remove all personal information and restore settings to their factory defaults.

1. Access the vehicle drawer.
2. Press ***SETTINGS***.
3. Press ***General***.
4. Press ***Reset***.
5. Press ***Master Reset***.
6. Follow the prompts on the screen to complete the reset.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

LOCATING THE AUXILIARY WIRING

Accessory Wiring

Located behind the A-pillar kick panel are factory installed wires for accessories and the trailer brake controller. These wires are labeled for easy identification.

Note: *Contact your authorized dealer for further information on the proper use of accessory wires and approved trailer brake controllers.*

WHAT ARE THE AUXILIARY SWITCHES

The auxiliary switchboard on the overhead console makes aftermarket customization easier with six prewired switches connected to the power distribution box. Each circuit is individually fused for connection of electrical accessories.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the safety compliance certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- It is your responsibility to ensure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislation.
- An authorized dealer needs to install mobile communication systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if the manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized dealer add any electrical or electronic accessories or components not produced by us to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of the other electrical systems in the vehicle.

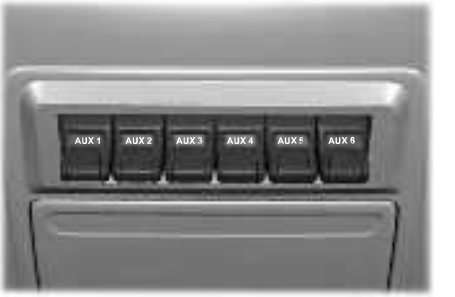
LOCATING THE AUXILIARY SWITCHES

The switches are labeled AUX 1 through AUX 6.

The auxiliary switches only operate when the ignition is in the on or off position and the delay accessory is active, whether the engine is running or not

We recommend that you leave the engine running to maintain battery charge when using the switches for an extended time or when using higher current draw accessories.

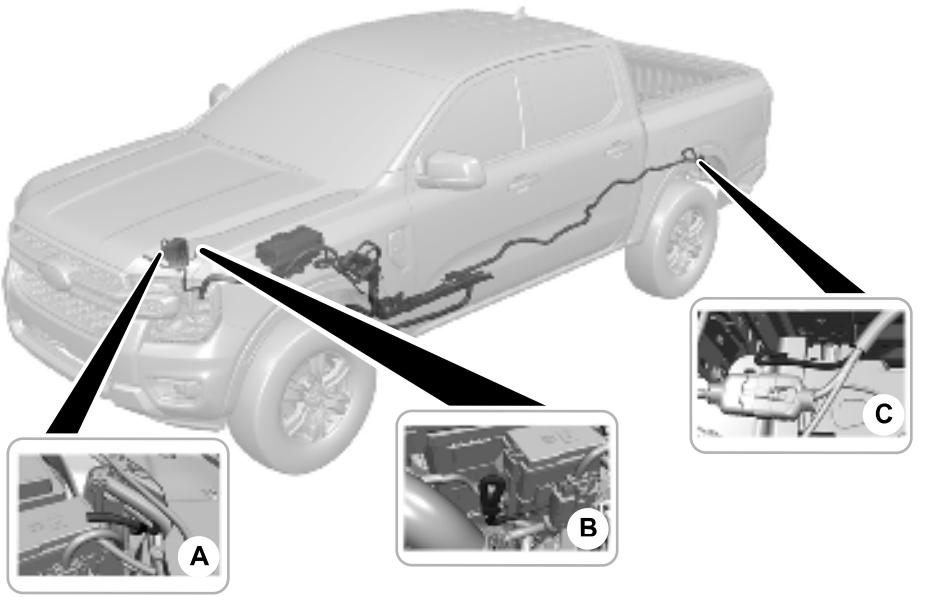
When a switch is turned on, the indicator light on the switch illuminates and the circuit provides power to the device wired to that switch.



Note: *When your vehicle has a diesel engine, use the auxiliary switches only the ignition key is in the on position. Using the auxiliary switches, even for limited amounts of time, can cause your battery to drain quickly and prevent your vehicle from starting.*

LOCATING THE AUXILIARY SWITCH WIRING

There are three sets of blunt-cut sealed circuits:

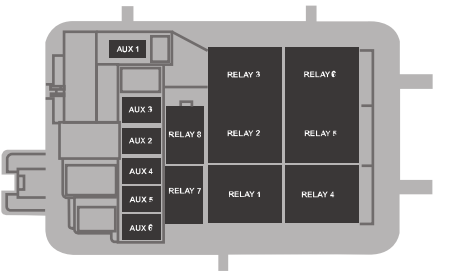


A	Circuit to radiator support.	Aux 6 Wire Location
B	Circuit near auxiliary fuse box.	Aux 1 Wire Location Aux 2 Wire Location Aux 5 Wire Location
C	Circuit to trailer hitch.	Aux 3 Wire Location Aux 4 Wire Location

Circuits from the under hood fuse box are powered. All other circuits are not connected at either end.

Additional information on fuse and relay locations is available. See your authorized dealer for service.

IDENTIFYING THE AUXILIARY SWITCH WIRING



The relays are coded as follows:

Interior overhead console	Wire Color	Wire Size	Fuse	Protected Component	Blunt cut Wire Location
AUX 1	Violet/ Green	1.5 mm²	5A	Relay 1	Vehicle location B
AUX 2	Blue/ Orange	1.5 mm²	15A	Relay 2	Vehicle location B
AUX 3	Yellow/ Orange	1.5 mm²	15A	Relay 3	Vehicle location C
AUX 4	Brown	1.5 mm²	15A	Relay 4	Vehicle location C
AUX 5	Green/ Brown	2.5 mm²	25A	Relay 5 (Driving lamps)	Vehicle location B
AUX 6	Yellow	2.5 mm²	25A	Relay 6 (Driving lamps)	Vehicle location A

Protected Component	Purpose
Relay 7	Not used
Relay 8	Auxiliary switch power

Ground information:

Power Distribution Box	Wire Color	Wire Size	Location
AUX 3	Black/Grey	1.5 mm²	Vehicle location C
AUX 4	Black/Green	1.5 mm²	Vehicle location C
AUX 6	Black/Yellow	2.5 mm²	Vehicle location A

GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes: one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep your cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 415).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

Factory-Trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

Note: *Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.*

Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle has an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system; a message appears in the information display at the proper oil change interval.

Your vehicle can be driven in such a way that dilutes and increases the level of oil by short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, extended idling, and low speed driving for long periods of time.

For additional information refer to your scheduled maintenance information or contact an authorized dealer.

When the oil change message appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 800 km (500 mi) of the message appearing. Make sure you reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

We have recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. We rely upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

We strongly recommend the use of only our genuine manufactured or our authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

Additives and Chemicals

This owner's manual and our Workshop Manual list the recommended additives and chemicals for your vehicle. We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership, should inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately.

Make sure to change your vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using our approved flushing chemical.

ROLLOVER WARNING

WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

OUR SUSTAINABILITY REPORT

You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit *www.sustainability.ford.com*.

THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit *http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html*.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit *www.wirelessconformity.ford.com*.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

AUDIO UNIT

NCA APPROVED: 7E5-7M-XC7-RDR

Armenia

Serbia

И005 21

European Union EU

South Africa

TA-2021/1110
ICASA
APPROVED

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7E5-7M-XC6-RDR

TA-2021/0771

ICASA APPROVED

South Korea

R-R-VC1-AHUA001
R-R-VC1-AHUB001

United Kingdom

UK CA

United States

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the condition that this device does not cause harmful interference.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-24708

Brazil

ANATEL
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações
17075-21-12270

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 195/MCPT/DDTIC
Date d'agrément : 06/09/2021

Europe Union EU

CE

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0985/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 24/08/2021

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X0E

Mexico

NOM NYCE

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – F5TR.

IFETEL: RCPAPF520-0480

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR00030033ANRT2021
Date d'agrément : 16/09/2021

Paraguay

CONATEL

2020-10-I-0753

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

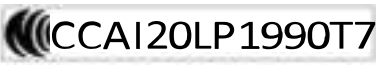
South Africa

TA-2021/2119
ICASA
APPROVED

South Korea

R-C-1Ap-F5TR

Taiwan



Thailand

1. ***This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.***
2. ***This radiocommunication equipment has the electromagnetic field strength in compliance with the Safety Standard for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health announced by the National Telecommunications Commission.***

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER80144/20
DEALER NO: DA83047/19

United Kingdom

United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: L2CF5TR

IC: 3432A-F5TR

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vietnam

Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: ZRO-M8-7E3-281

BODY CONTROL MODULE

Argentina

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - M3NA2C766336.

Moldova

Brazil

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR 20148 ANRT 2019
Date d'agrément: 19/06/2019

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Paraguay

CONATEL

2019-01-I-000076

South Africa

TA-2019/5280

ICASA APPROVED

Serbia

И011 20

Ukraine

UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA REGISTERED No: ER68566/19

DEALER No: DA37380/15

United Kingdom

UK CA

United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: M3NA2C766336

IC: 7812A-A2C766336

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vietnam

Ford Vietnam A00182015

ICT

Zambia

ZICTA

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/7/103

CRUISE CONTROL MODULE

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-24707

Brazil

Europe Union EU

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 059/DDTIC/2020
Date d'agrément : 01/10/2020

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X13

EAC Marking - Russia, Belarus, Kazakhstan

Independent State Of Samoa

Israel

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0835/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 31/08/2020

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – F3TR.

Moldova

Malaysia

HIDF16000009

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:
MR00030034ANRT2021

Date d'agrément: 16/09/2021

Pakistan

Paraguay

2020-10-I-0752

Sierra Leone

TAN: 2021-002-0028

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

South Africa

South Korea

R-C-1Ap-F3TR

Taiwan

Unites Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER80143/20
DEALER NO: DA83047/19

Thailand

1. ***This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.***
2. ***This radiocommunication equipment has the electromagnetic field strength in compliance with the Safety Standard for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health announced by the National Telecommunications Commission.***

Ukraine

United Kingdom

United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: L2CF3TR

IC: 3432A-F3TR

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

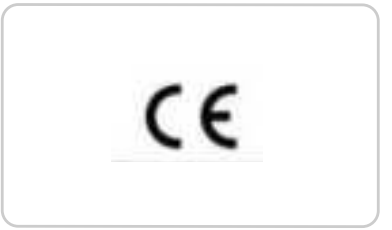
Zambia

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS

Argentina

Brazil

European Union EU



NR: 2016-9-I-000220
NR: 2016-9-I-000223

Pakistan

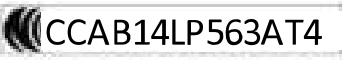
Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931423

Paraguay

NR: 2017-10-I-0000334
NR: 2018-07-I-000317

Taiwan



TRA
REGISTERED No: ER47690/16
DEALER No: DA37380/15

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER37535/15

DEALER No:
DA37380/15

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER46754/16
DEALER NO: DA37380/15

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER49357/16
DEALER NO: DA37380/15

United Kingdom

United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: M3N-A3C054338

FCC ID: M3N-A3C054339

FCC ID: N5F-A08TAA

FCC ID: N5F-A08TDA

FCC ID: M3N-A2C931423

FCC ID: M3N-A2C931426

IC: 7812A-A3C054338

IC: 7812A-A3C054339

IC: 3248A-A08TAA

IC: 7812A-A2C931423

IC: 7812A-A2C931426

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Argentina

Brazil

Europe

CE

UKCA

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 1R3-1M-7E1-115

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA - OUC26006559.

Moldova

024

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 14721 ANRT 2017
Date d'agrément : 12/08/2017

Paraguay

NR: 2018-04-I-000175

South Korea

MSIP- R-RMM-OAC-OUC26006559

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

N0650-18

Taiwan

South Africa

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No: ER95949/21
DEALER No: DA37380/15

United States of America and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: OUC26006559

IC: 850K-26006559

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Zambia

ZICTA

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2017/12/14

RADIO TRANSCEIVER MODULE

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéros d'agrément : 033/DDTIC/2020
Date d'agrément : 07/06/2020

Europe Union (EU)

CE

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-108

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - FO1-RX315UDA.

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0803/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément: 03/06/2020

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24102 ANRT 2020
Date d'agrément : 18/05/2020

Mexico

IFT: RCPAPFO21-0004
"La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:
(1) es posible que este
equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
(2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar
cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar
su operación no deseada."

Pakistan

Moldova

Samoa

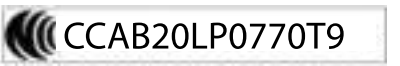
Serbia

Ukraine

South Africa

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

Taiwan



United Kingdom

Zambia

ZICTA

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2020/6/247

Brazil

ANATEL

08657-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

SYNC

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: C-24008

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: C-24009

ANATEL

08658-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 124/DDTIC/2019
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 125/DDTIC/2019
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

European Union EU

CE

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-182

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-180

Indonesia

Model: SYNC-G4
Sertifikat Nomor: 80700/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Model: SYNC-G4L
Sertifikat Nomor: 81116/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4.

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4L.

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0691/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

Malaysia

MCMC

SQASI/TA/19/4047
SQASI/TA/19/4046

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0692/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

Moldova

024

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20608 ANRT 2019
07 AOUT 2019

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20606 ANRT 2019
07 AOUT 2019

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority
PTA
Approved by PTA 2019

Paraguay

CONATEL

Serbia

И005 20

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

South Africa

TA-2019/2465
ICASA
APPROVED

2020-03-I-00192
2020-03-I-00193

TA-2019/2466

South Korea

MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4

MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4L

Ukraine

Taiwan

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No: ER74903/19
DEALER No: DA37380/15

Zambia

ZICTA
ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/11/41

United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4L

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

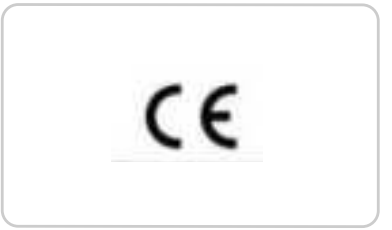
ZICTA
ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/11/40

TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT

Brazil

ANATEL
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações
11807-21-01505

Europe Union EU



Mexico

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER87741/20
DEALER No:
DA83047/19

United Kingdom

United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-14H074-NA1

IC: 1422A-14H074NA1

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

South Africa

Vietnam

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: 433 MHZ SENSORS

Argentina

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 198/MCPT/DDTCC
Date d'agrément : 7/9/2021

European Union (EU)

CE

Mexico

IFT: RLVSCMR15-1238
"La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:
(1) es posible que este
equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
(2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar
cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar
su operación no deseada."

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 3R88M14030

Moldova

1024

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR9098
ANRT 2014
Date d'agrément: 14/03/2014

Malaysia

MCMC

CIDF15000486

Paraguay

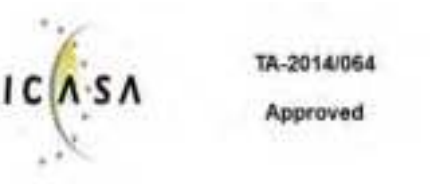
NR: 2017-06-I-0000175

Samoa

Serbia

Singapore

South Africa



South Korea

MSIP-CRM-SRD-AG2SZ4

Ukraine

United Arab Emirates

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER80634/20
DEALER No:
DA37380/15

United Kingdom

UKCA

Vietnam

Zambia

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGING MODULE

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-26491

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-26492

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-26493

Brazil

ANATEL

Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

12804-21-14208

Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC
N° d'homologation : HER-0054/Juin/2021
Date d'homologation : 02/06/2021

European Union

CE

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7ES-7M-XB1-RDR

Model: WCFDM00N2A5
Sertifikat Nomor: 80112/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Indonesia

Model: WCFDM00N2A1
Sertifikat Nomor: 80110/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Model: WCFDM00N2A3
Sertifikat Nomor: 80111/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Israel

51-80015

51-80013

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA - WCFDM00N2A.

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0934/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

Malaysia

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0933/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

RGEZ/35A/0521/S(21-2033)
RGEZ/35A/0521/S(21-2032)
RGEZ/35A/0521/S(21-2031)

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0935/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

Moldova

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027924ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027925ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027923ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

Paraguay

CONATEL

2021-04-I-0204
2021-04-I-0203
2021-04-I-0202

Russia

EAC

Serbia

И005 21

Sierra Leone

TAN: 2021-002-0099

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

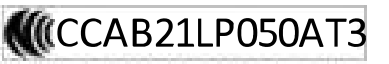
DA 00461

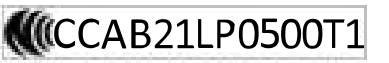
South Africa

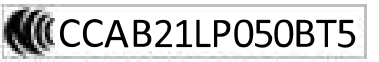
South Korea

R-R-LGE-WCFDM00N2A1

Taiwan







Ukraine

United Kingdom

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA REGISTERED No:
ER98638/21
DEALER No:
DA37380/15

TRA REGISTERED No:
ER00421/21
DEALER No:
DA37380/15

TRA REGISTERED No:
ER00422/21
DEALER No:
DA37380/15

United States and Canada

FCC ID: BEJWCFDM00N2A
IC: 2703H-WCFDM00N2A

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.

This product is not end-user serviceable.

RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator and your body.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's license-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. *L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;*
2. *L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.*

Zambia

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

ECALL USER INFORMATION

eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3

1 DESCRIPTION OF THE ECALL IN-VEHICLE SYSTEM

1.1. Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: See **What Is eCall** (page 49).

1.2. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

1.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.

1.4. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: See **Manually Making an Emergency Call** (page 49).

1.5. In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: See **Emergency Call Indicators** (page 50).

2 INFORMATION ON DATA PROCESSING

2.1. Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3).

2.2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.

2.3. Types of data and its recipients.

2.3.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle).
- Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen).
- Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel.

– Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
– Any additional data (if applicable): -

2.3.2. Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.
Additional information (if available): -

2.4. Arrangements for data processing.

2.4.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
Additional remarks (if any): -

2.4.2. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.
Additional remarks (if any): -

2.4.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.

2.4.3.1. The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.

2.4.3.2. The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.
Additional remarks (if any): -

2.5. Modalities for exercising data subject's rights.

2.5.1. The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

2.5.2. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

2.5.3. Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Contact the data protection officer of your local Public Safety Answering Point.

(1) Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).

(2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).

(3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

3 INFORMATION ON THIRD PARTY SERVICES AND OTHER ADDED VALUE SERVICES (IF FITTED)

3.1. Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS system/added value service: Your vehicle may be equipped with a modem that allows for emergency calls (eCall), automatic software updates and other services. See the information in this Owner's Manual or in the FordPass app for a description of these services. We provide a 112-based eCall in-vehicle system and we do not provide a TPS eCall system.

3.2. Any processing of personal data through the TPS system/other added value service shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC and 2002/58/EC.

3.2.1. Legal basis for the use of TPS system and/or added value services and for processing data through them: For information on the legal bases for processing of personal data through added value services, review the data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. This privacy information can be found in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.

3.3. The TPS system and/or other added value services shall process personal data only on the base of the explicit consent of the data subject (the vehicle's owner or owners).

3.4. Modalities for data processing through TPS system and/or other added value services, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data: See the privacy information in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.

3.5. The owner of a vehicle equipped with a TPS eCall system and/or other added value service in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to choose to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system rather than the TPS eCall system and the other added value service.

3.5.1. Contact details for handling TPS eCall system deactivation requests: You can have all added value services deactivated except for eCall. To find out more about having all added value services deactivated except for eCall, search Ask Ford on the local Ford website or contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center by e-mail through the FordPass app or by using the e-mail address on the local Ford website.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR

COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional

charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (I) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control**: Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (I) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is $75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving $10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving $75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or $1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than $75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(I) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

I. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,

ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.
- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.
End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN "INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO"
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION Nº IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique	
Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministèrie de l'Equipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"
Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psma.com.au).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATITVES AND PERMITED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFROMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2(and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6.240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the "**Suppliers**")) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or

Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

CONVERTING OR MODIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

If converting or modifying your vehicle from production refer to the Body and Equipment Mounting Manual at *https://azureford.sharepoint.com/sites/SVEBEMMPUBLIC*.

This is the technical guide for the modification and conversion of Ford Commercial Vehicles. For access you need to register a Ford Guest Account before following the link.

To request a FREE account please email BEMM2@ford.com with the following information:

- Full name.
- Company.
- Email address.

Ford Motor Company cannot allow external partners to access SharePoint sites leveraging a public domain email account. Public domain email addresses are those that are freely available on the Internet and do not require a paid service. Examples include: Gmail, Hotmail, Live, AOL, Yahoo, iCloud, Outlook, etc. Please apply using a company-maintained email address (e.g. username@company.com).

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

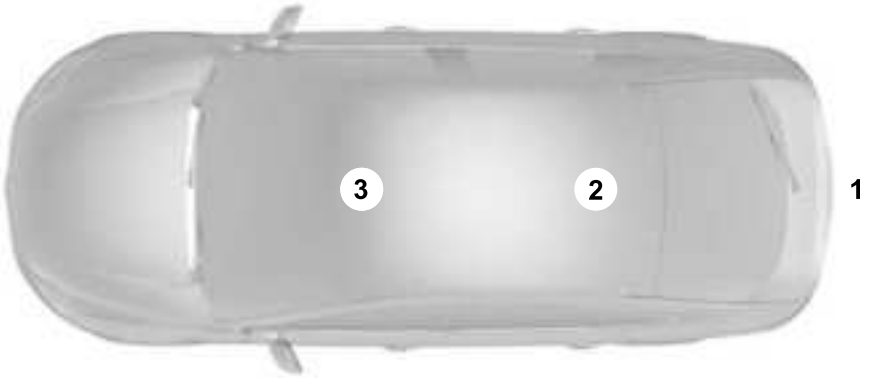
WARNING: Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

Note: *We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start,* ***Bluetooth®*** *connectivity or satellite navigation.*

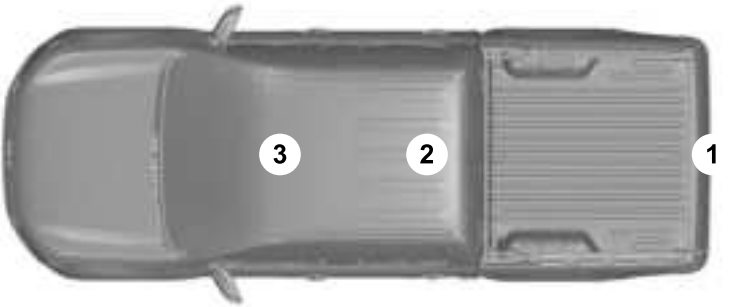
Note: *Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.*

Car/SUV



Van

Truck



Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

1

12V Battery....373
12V Battery Precautions....373
Battery Management System Limitations....374
Changing the 12V Battery....374
Charging the 12V Battery....375
How Does the Battery Management System Work....374
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V Battery....375
Resetting the Battery Sensor....375
What Is the Battery Management System....373
12V Battery – Troubleshooting....376
12V Battery – Information Messages....376
12V Battery – Warning Lamps....376

3

360 Degree Camera....245
360 Degree Camera Settings....247
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines....246
360 Degree Camera Precautions....245
360 Degree Camera Settings....247
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off....247
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View....247

4

4WD
See: Four-Wheel Drive....197

A

A/C
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control....119
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control....124
About This Publication....17
ABS
See: Brakes....209
Accessing Apps....458
Accessing Feature Drawers....449
Accessing Navigation....460
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position - Vehicles With: Push Button Start....161
Accessing the Trip Computer....116
Accessories....466
Active Park Assist....248
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting....252
Active Park Assist Precautions....248
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting....252
Active Park Assist – Frequently Asked Questions....252
Active Park Assist – Information Messages....252
Adaptive Cruise Control....256
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting....268
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control....266
Lane Centering....263
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation....259
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators....263
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations....257
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions....256
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting....268
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages....268
Adaptive Front Lighting....93
Switching the Headlamps for Driving on the Left or Right-Hand Side of the Road....93
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification....187
AdBlue® Gauge - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen....104
AdBlue® Gauge - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen....104
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors....99
Adjusting the Headlamps....377
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness....95
Adjusting the Map....460
Changing the Format of the Map....460
Zooming the Map In and Out....460

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy....40
Adjusting the Sound Settings....444
Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance....276
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....77
Adjusting the Volume....443
Aid Mode....280
How Does Aid Mode Work....280
What Is Aid Mode....280
Airbag Precautions....45
Airbags....43
Front Passenger Sensing System....45
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control....119
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control....124
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L Diesel....427
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 3.0L Diesel....427
Alert and Aid Mode....280
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work....281
What Is Alert and Aid Mode....280
Alert Mode....280
Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity....280
How Does Alert Mode Work....280
What Is Alert Mode....280
AM/FM Radio....445
AM/FM Radio Limitations....445
Selecting an AM/FM Radio Station....445
Ambient Lighting....95
Adjusting Ambient Lighting....95
Switching Ambient Lighting On and Off....95
Anti-Lock Braking System....209
Anti-Lock Braking System Indicators....209
Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations....209
Anti-Theft Alarm System....73
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System....74
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm System....74
How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System Work....73
What Are the Inclination Sensors....73
What Are the Interior Sensors....73
What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System....73
What Is the Battery Backup Alarm....74
What Is the Perimeter Alarm....73
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings....74
Setting the Alarm Security Level....74
Switching Ask on Exit On and Off....74
What are the Alarm Security Levels....74
What Is Ask on Exit....74
Appendices....542
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission....215
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency....215
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission....215
Applying the Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission....213
Applying the Parking Brake - Manual Transmission....213
App Precautions....458
App Requirements....458
Apps....458
Audio System....443
AM/FM Radio....445
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio....445
Traffic Announcements....446
Audio System Precautions....443
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror....98
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror Limitations....98
What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror....98
Auto Hold....224
Auto Hold Indicators....224
Autolamps....85
Autolamp Settings....85
What Are Autolamps....85
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake....216
Automatic Crash Shutoff....337
Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions....337
Re-Enabling Your Vehicle....338
What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff....337
Automatic Emergency Braking....302
Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off....302

What Is Automatic Emergency Braking....302
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry/Push Button Start....161
How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work....161
Overriding Automatic Engine Stop....161
Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off....161
What Is Automatic Engine Stop....161
Automatic High Beam Control....88
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators....90
Automatic High Beam Control Limitations....89
Automatic High Beam Control Precautions....89
Automatic High Beam Control Requirements....89
How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work....88
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control....90
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off....90
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting....90
Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages....90
Automatic Return to Park (P) - Vehicles With: Electronic Shift....195
Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations....195
How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work....195
What Is Automatic Return to Park (P)....195
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - Vehicles With: Electronic Shift....196
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - Vehicles With: Mechanical Shift....196
Automatic Transmission....192
Automatic Return to Park (P) - Vehicles With: Electronic Shift....195
Automatic Transmission Positions....192
Manually Shifting Gears....193
Temporary Neutral Mode - Vehicles With: Electronic Shift....194
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification....430
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators....193
Automatic Transmission Positions....192
Drive (D)....192
Manual (M)....193
Neutral (N)....192
Park (P)....192
Reverse (R)....192
Automatic Transmission Precautions....192
Auto Mode....121
Auto Mode Indicators....121
Switching Auto Mode On and Off....121
Switching Dual Mode On and Off....122
Autorelock....66
How Does Autorelock Work....66
Auto-Start-Stop....166
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting....168
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators....167
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions - Automatic Transmission....166
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions - Manual Transmission....166
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting....168
Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions....169
Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages....168
Autounlock....66
Autounlock Requirements....66
Switching Autounlock On and Off....66
What Is Autounlock....66
Autowipers....79
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor....80
Autowipers Settings....79
What Are Autowipers....79
Auxiliary Heater....128
Auxiliary Heater Limitations....128
Auxiliary Heater Precautions....128
Auxiliary Switches....467

B

Battery Fuse Box....354
Accessing the Battery Fuse Box....354
Identifying the Fuses in the Battery Fuse Box....354
Locating the Battery Fuse Box....354
Beginning a Voice Interaction....451
Blind Spot Assist....282
Blind Spot Assist Indicators....283
Blind Spot Assist Limitations....282
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work....282
What Is Blind Spot Assist....282
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage....284
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Indicators....285
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Limitations....284
How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Work....284
What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage....284
Blind Spot Information System....289
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting....293
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage....291
Blind Spot Information System Limitations....289
Blind Spot Information System Precautions....289
Blind Spot Information System Requirements....289
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting....293
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages....293
Blind Spot Information System – Warning Lamps....293
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage....291
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Limitations....291
How Does Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Work....291
Selecting a Trailer....292
Setting a Trailer Length....292
Switching Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage On and Off....291
What Is Blind Spot Information System with Trailer Coverage....291
Bluetooth®....457
Body Control Module Fuse Box....354
Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box....355
Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box....355
Locating the Body Control Module Fuse Box....354
Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....360
Booster Seats....37
Brake Fluid Specification....210
Brake Over Accelerator....209
Brake Precautions....209
Brakes....209
Anti-Lock Braking System....209
Brakes – Troubleshooting....211
Brakes – Troubleshooting....211
Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions....212
Brakes – Information Messages....211
Brakes – Warning Lamps....211
Brake System Inspection....359

C

Canceling the Set Speed....255
Canceling the Set Speed Limit....273
Capacities and Specifications....415
Catalytic Converter....189
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting....189
Catalytic Converter Precautions....189
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting....189
Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps....189
Center Console....155
Opening the Center Console....155
Center Display Limitations....448
Center Display Overview....448
Center Display Precautions....448
Changing a Flat Tire....404
Changing a Road Wheel....404
Changing the Backup Battery....51

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Changing the Fuel Filter....372
Changing the Language....115
Changing the Measurement Unit....115
Changing the Parking Heater Remote Control Battery....131
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Flip Key....56
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start....54
Changing the Set Speed Limit....273
Changing the Temperature Unit....115
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit....115
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password....441
Charging a Device....147
Charging a Wireless Device....152
Checking MyKey System Status....62
Checking the Brake Fluid....210
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level....191
Checking the Manual Transmission Fluid Level....191
Checking the Seatbelts....41
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Status....186
Checking the Tire Pressures....396
Checking the Wiper Blades....80
Child Restraint Anchor Points....33
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points....33
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points....33
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points....33
Child Restraints....34
Child Restraint Position Information....34
Child Restraints Recommendation....36
Child Safety....32
Child Restraint Anchor Points....33
Child Restraints....34
Installing Child Restraints....36
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Mechanical Child Proof Locks....38
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Remote Child Proof Locks....38
Child Safety Precautions....32
Cleaning the Exterior....387
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors....388
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel....387
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps....387
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics....388
Cleaning the Engine Compartment....388
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions....387
Cleaning the Roller Shutter....388
Cleaning the Underbody....388
Cleaning Wheels....387
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades....387
Cleaning the Interior....389
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats....391
Cleaning Displays and Screens....390
Cleaning Fabric....390
Cleaning Leather....390
Cleaning Plastic....389
Cleaning Seatbelts....391
Cleaning the Instrument Panel....389
Cleaning Vinyl....390
Clearing All MyKeys....62
Climate Control....119
Auto Mode....121
Climate Control Hints....122
Clutch Fluid Capacity and Specification....191
Cold Weather Precautions....333
Configuring the Trip Computer....116
Connected Navigation....460
Connected Vehicle....438
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting....439
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network....438
Connected Vehicle Data....23
Connected Vehicle Limitations....438
Connected Vehicle Requirements....438
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting....439
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions....439
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device....457
Connecting a Trailer....322
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting....324
Tow Ball....321
Connecting a Trailer Precautions....321

Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting....324
Connecting a Trailer – Information Messages....324
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network....438
Connecting FordPass to the Modem....438
Enabling and Disabling the Modem....438
What Is the Modem....438
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network....438
Connecting Your Phone....453
Converting or Modifying Your Vehicle....541
Coolant....368
Adding Coolant....369
Changing the Coolant....370
Checking the Coolant Level....369
Coolant – Information Messages....372
Coolant Precautions....368
Coolant – Warning Lamps....371
Managing the Coolant Temperature....371
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L Diesel....425
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 3.0L Diesel....426
Crash and Breakdown Information....335
Automatic Crash Shutoff....337
Jump Starting the Vehicle....335
Post-Crash Alert System....337
Post Impact Braking....337
Recovery Towing....338
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Flip Key....61
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start....61
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot....441
Cross Traffic Alert....294
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting....296
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators....295
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations....294
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions....294
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting....296
Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages....296
Cross Traffic Alert – Warning Lamps....296
Cruise Control....254
Cruise Control Indicators....255
Cup Holders....154
Locating the Cup Holders....154
Customer Information....472
Radio Frequency Certification Labels....473
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen....114
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen....114

D

Data Privacy....21
Declaration of Conformity....472
Diesel Particulate Filter....178
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration....179
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting....181
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration....179
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Limitations....180
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Precautions....179
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Requirements....179
Starting Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration....180
What Is Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration....179
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions....178
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements....179
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting....181
Diesel Particulate Filter – Information Messages....181
Diesel Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps....181
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio....445
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Limitations....445

Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Settings....446
Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Station....446
Switching Service Linking On and Off....445
What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio....445
What Is Service Linking....445
Directing the Flow of Air....120
Distance Alert....301
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Distance Alert....302
What Is Distance Alert....301
Distance Indication....300
Distance Indication Indicator....301
Switching Distance Indication On and Off....301
What Is Distance Indication....300
Door Lock Indicators....66
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings....66
Doors and Locks....65
Autorelock....66
Autounlock....66
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting....67
Mislock....66
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle....65
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle....65
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting....67
Doors and Locks – Frequently Asked Questions....68
Doors and Locks – Information Messages....67
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps....67
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap....367
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 2.0L Diesel....372
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 3.0L Diesel....373
Drive Mode Control....270
Drive Modes....271
Drive Modes....271
Eco....271
Mud/Ruts....271
Normal....271
Sand....271
Slippery....272
Tow/Haul....272
Driver Alert....305
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting....306
Driver Alert Indicators....306
Driver Alert Limitations....305
Driver Alert Precautions....305
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting....306
Driver Alert – Information Messages....306
Driving Economically....333
Driving Hints....331
Off-Road Driving....331

E

eCall....49
eCall – Troubleshooting....51
eCall – Troubleshooting....51
eCall – Information Messages....51
eCall User Information....513
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning....216
Electric Parking Brake....215
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting....217
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting....217
Electric Parking Brake – Frequently Asked Questions....218
Electric Parking Brake – Information Messages....218
Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps....217
Electric Power Steering....234
Electric Power Steering Precautions....234
How Does Electric Power Steering Work....234
Electromagnetic Compatibility....542
Electronic Locking Differential....205
Electronic Locking Differential – Troubleshooting....207
Electronic Locking Differential Indicators....206
Electronic Locking Differential – Troubleshooting....207
Electronic Locking Differential – Information Messages....207
Emergency Call Indicators....50

Emergency Call Limitations....49
Emergency Call Requirements....49
Emergency Call System Data - Vehicles With: eCall....24
Emergency Equipment....343
Emergency Towing - Automatic Transmission....342
Emergency Towing - Manual Transmission....342
Enabling Apps on an Android Device....459
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device....459
Enabling Remote Start....117
End User License Agreement....516
Engine Air Filter....366
Changing the Engine Air Filter....366
Engine Air Filter - Information Messages....367
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge....103
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.0L Diesel....424
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 3.0L Diesel....424
Engine Oil....364
Adding Engine Oil....364
Checking the Engine Oil Level....364
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification....365
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview....364
Engine Oil – Information Messages....366
How Does the Engine Oil Change Reminder Work....365
Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor....365
What Is the Engine Oil Change Reminder....365
Engine Oil Pressure Gauge - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen....103
Engine Oil Pressure Gauge - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen....103
Engine Specifications - 2.0L Diesel....415
Engine Specifications - 3.0L Diesel....416
Entering a Parallel Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist....249
Entering a Parallel Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist....249
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist....250
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist....251
Evasive Steering Assist....302
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations....302
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off....303
What Is Evasive Steering Assist....302
Event Data....22
Exiting a Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist....251
Exiting a Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist....251
Extending the Remote Start Duration....118
Exterior Bulbs....378
Changing a Front Fog Lamp Bulb....385
Changing a Front Turn Signal Lamp Bulb....383
Changing a Headlamp Bulb....380
Changing a Rear Lamp Bulb....385
Exterior Bulb Specification Chart....378
Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly....380
Exterior Lamps....85
Exterior Lamp Indicators....87
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning....87
Switching the Cargo Lamps On....86
Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off....85
Switching Welcome Lighting On and Off....87
Using the Front Fog Lamps....86
Using the Rear Fog Lamps....86
Using the Turn Signal Lamps....85
Exterior Lighting Control....83
Exterior Lighting....83
Adaptive Front Lighting....93
Autolamps....85
Automatic High Beam Control....88
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting....90
Exterior Lamps....85

Exterior Zone Lighting....87
Glare Free Lighting....91
Glare Free Lighting – Troubleshooting....93
Headlamps....83
Headlamps – Troubleshooting....84
Exterior Mirrors....99
Exterior Zone Lighting....87
Using the Exterior Zone Lighting....87
What Is Exterior Zone Lighting....87

F

Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts....40
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank....184
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank in Cold Weather....184
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump....184
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank Using a Portable Container....185
Flat Tire
See: Changing a Flat Tire....404
Floor Mats....334
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Folding Mirrors....99
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Folding Mirrors....100
Ford Power-Up
See: Software Update Settings....463
See: Vehicle Software Updates....463
Four-Wheel Drive....197
Four-Wheel Drive Modes....201
Four-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting....203
Four-Wheel Drive Indicators....202
Four-Wheel Drive Limitations....197
Four-Wheel Drive Modes....201
Four-Wheel Drive Auto....202
Four-Wheel Drive High....202
Four-Wheel Drive Low....202
Two-Wheel Drive High....201
Four-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting....203
Four-Wheel Drive – Information Messages....203
Four-Wheel Drive – Warning Lamps....203
Front Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification....432
Front Exterior....30
Front Parking Aid....238
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings....239
Front Parking Aid Limitations....239
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors....239
What is the Front Parking Aid....238
Front Passenger Sensing System....45
Front Passenger Sensing System Indicators....48
Front Passenger Sensing System Precautions....48
How Does the Front Passenger Sensing System Work....46
What Is the Front Passenger Sensing System....45
Front Seat Precautions....134
Front Seats....134
Heated Seats....139
Manual Seats....135
Power Seats....137
Ventilated Seats....140
Fuel and Refueling....170
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting....177
Fuel Quality....171
Refueling....173
Running Out of Fuel....171
Fuel and Refueling Precautions....170
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting....177
Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages....177
Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps....177
Fuel Consumption Figures - 2.0L Diesel....423
Fuel Consumption Figures - 3.0L Diesel....422
Fuel Consumption Regulations....176
Fuel Gauge....103
Fuel Gauge Limitations....103
Locating the Fuel Filler Door....103
What Is Distance to Empty....103
What Is the Fuel Gauge....103
What Is the Low Fuel Reminder....103

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Fuel Quality.....171
Selecting the Correct Fuel.....171
Fuel Tank Capacity.....176
Fuse Precautions.....344
Fuses.....344
Battery Fuse Box.....354
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....354
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....358
Under Hood Fuse Box.....344
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....358
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....358

G

General Maintenance Information.....470
Glare Free Lighting.....91
Glare Free Lighting Indicators.....92
Glare Free Lighting Limitations.....92
Glare Free Lighting Precautions.....91
Glare Free Lighting Requirements.....91
How Does Glare Free Lighting Work.....91
Overriding Glare Free Lighting.....92
Switching Glare Free Lighting On and Off.....92
Glare Free Lighting – Troubleshooting.....93
Glare Free Lighting – Information Messages.....93
Glasses Holder.....155
Locating the Glasses Holder.....155
Global Opening and Closing.....96
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....97
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....97
Using Global Closing.....97
Using Global Opening.....96
What Is Global Opening and Closing.....96
Glove Compartment.....154
Locking the Glove Compartment.....155
Opening the Glove Compartment.....154

H

Headlamp Adjusting
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....377
Headlamps.....83
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps.....83
Headlamp Indicators.....84
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....83
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....83
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....84
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions.....84
Heated Seats.....139
Heated Seat Precautions.....139
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....139
Heating
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control.....119
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....124
Hill Descent Control.....232
Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting.....233
Hill Descent Control Indicator.....233
Hill Descent Control Precautions.....232
Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting.....233
Hill Descent Control – Information Messages.....233
Hill Start Assist.....223
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....223
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....223
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....223
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....223
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....360
Horn.....77
How Does Active Park Assist Work - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist.....248
How Does Active Park Assist Work - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist.....248
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work.....256
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work.....256
How Does Auto Hold Work.....224
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....289
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....294

How Does Drive Mode Control Work....270
How Does Driver Alert Work....305
How Does eCall Work....49
How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work - 4x4 with Part Time Engagement....197
How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work - Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode....197
How Does Hill Descent Control Work....232
How Does Hill Start Assist Work....223
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work....297
How Does Reverse Braking Assist Work....219
How Does Stability Control Work....228
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work....245
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work....178
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work....275
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work....278
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work....144
How Does the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Work....183
How Does the Speed Limiter Work....273
How Does Traction Control Work....226
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work....307
How Does Trailer Sway Control Work....328
How Do the Front Airbags Work....43
How Do the Knee Airbags Work....44
How Do the Side Airbags Work....43
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work....44

I

Identifying Fuse Types....358
Identifying the Auxiliary Switch Wiring....468
Identifying the Climate Control Unit....119
Ignition Switch....157
Inflating the Tires....396
Inspecting the Tire for Damage....398
Inspecting the Tire for Wear....398
Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems....400
Installing Child Restraints....36
Using Tether Straps....36
Instrument Cluster Display....109
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen....109
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen....112
Instrument Cluster Indicators....106
Instrument Cluster....101
Fuel Gauge....103
Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen....101
Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen....101
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps....104
Instrument Panel - LHD....26
Instrument Panel - RHD....27
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control....266
Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance....267
How Does Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Work....266
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Alerts....267
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators....267
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations....267
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions....266
Switching Intelligent Mode On and Off....267
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings....276
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators....276
Intelligent Speed Limiter....275
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting....277
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions....275

Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting....277
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Frequently Asked Questions....277
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit....273
Interior Air Quality....133
Interior Bulbs....386
Interior Bulb Specification Chart....386
Interior Lamp Function....94
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off....94
What Is the Interior Lamp Function....94
Interior Lighting....94
Ambient Lighting....95
Interior Lamp Function....94
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting....95
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting....95
Interior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions....95
Interior Mirror....98
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror....98
Interior Mirror Precautions....98
Introduction....17

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle....335
Jump Starting Precautions....335
Jump Starting the Vehicle....335
Preparing the Vehicle....335

K

Keyless Entry....69
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting....70
Keyless Entry Limitations....69
Keyless Entry Settings....69
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting....70
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions....70
Keys and Remote Controls....52
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting....59
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting....59
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages....59

L

Lane Centering....263
How Does Lane Centering Work....263
Lane Centering Alerts....265
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation....265
Lane Centering Indicators....266
Lane Centering Limitations....264
Lane Centering Manual Cancellation....266
Lane Centering Precautions....264
Lane Centering Requirements....264
Switching Lane Centering On and Off....265
Lane Keeping System Indicators....281
Lane Keeping System....278
Aid Mode....280
Alert and Aid Mode....280
Alert Mode....280
Blind Spot Assist....282
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage....284
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting....286
Lane Keeping System Limitations....278
Lane Keeping System Precautions....278
Lane Keeping System Settings....279
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting....286
Lane Keeping System – Frequently Asked Questions....287
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages....286
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft....326
Live Traffic....460
Switching Live Traffic On and Off....460
What Is Live Traffic....460
Load Carrying....309
Roof Rack....311
Load Carrying Precautions....309
Load Retaining Fixtures and Capacities....309
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras....245
Locating the Auxiliary Switches....467
Locating the Auxiliary Switch Wiring....467

Locating the Auxiliary Wiring....466
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors....290
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir....209
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors....295
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel....171
Locating the Memory Function Buttons....146
Locating the Power Outlets....149
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors....299
Locating the Rear View Camera....242
Locating the Tire label....394
Locating the USB Ports....147
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger....152
Locating Your Vehicle....53
Locking and Unlocking the Tailgate....71
Locking the Rear Window Controls....97
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start....77
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start....77

M

Maintenance....360
12V Battery....373
12V Battery – Troubleshooting....376
Coolant....368
Engine Air Filter....366
Engine Oil....364
Exterior Bulbs....378
Interior Bulbs....386
Maintenance Precautions....360
Making and Receiving a Phone Call....454
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror....98
Manually Making an Emergency Call....49
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake....216
Manually Shifting Gears....193
Shifting Using the Buttons on the Selector Lever....193
Manual Seats....135
Adjusting the Head Restraint....135
Adjusting the Lumbar Support....137
Adjusting the Seat Backrest....136
Adjusting the Seat Height....137
Folding the Seat Backrest....142
Folding the Seats....142
Head Restraint Components....135
Installing the Head Restraint....136
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....136
Removing the Head Restraint....136
Unfolding the Seat Backrest....142
Unfolding the Seats....143
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification....191
Manual Transmission....190
Manual Transmission Precautions....190
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators....190
Memory Function....146
Memory Function Precautions....146
Mislock....66
Mislock Limitations....66
Switching Mislock On and Off....66
What Is Mislock....66
Mobile Communications Equipment....512
Mobile Device Data....23
MyKey Settings....60
Configurable MyKey Settings....60
Non-Configurable MyKey Settings....60
MyKey – Troubleshooting....62
MyKey – Frequently Asked Questions....64
MyKey – Information Messages....62
MyKey™....60
MyKey Settings....60
MyKey – Troubleshooting....62

N

Navigation Map Updates....460
Navigation....460
Adjusting the Map....460
Live Traffic....460
Route Guidance....461
Setting a Destination....460
Waypoints....461

O

Off-Road Driving....329
After Driving Your Vehicle Off-Road....333
Basic Off-Road Driving Techniques....331
Off-Road Screen....329
Water Wading....332
What Is Off-Road Driving....331
Off-Road Screen....329
How Does The Off-Road Screen Work....329
Switching The Off-Road Screen On and Off....329
Using the Off-Road Screen....329
What Is The Off-Road Screen....329
Opening and Closing the Flip Key....52
Opening and Closing the Hood....360
Opening and Closing the Windows....96
Opening the Tailgate....71
Opening the Tailgate From Outside Your Vehicle....71
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle....65
Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle....65
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking....65
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle....65
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade....65
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control....65
OTA
See: Software Update Settings....463
See: Vehicle Software Updates....463
Our Sustainability Report....472
Overriding Reverse Braking Assist....220
Overriding the Set Speed....263
Over the air
See: Software Update Settings....463
Over-the-air
See: Software Update Settings....463
See: Vehicle Software Updates....463
See: Vehicle Software Updates....463

P

Parking Aid Indicators....241
Parking Aid Precautions....237
Parking Aids....237
Front Parking Aid....238
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting....241
Rear Parking Aid....238
Side Parking Aid....239
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting....241
Parking Aids – Information Messages....241
Parking Brake Audible Warning....213
Parking Brake....213
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting....213
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting....213
Parking Brake – Information Messages....214
Parking Brake – Warning Lamps....213
Parking Heater Limitations....129
Parking Heater....129
Parking Heater Settings....129
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting....132
Parking Heater Precautions....129
Parking Heater Remote Control Indicators....131
Parking Heater Settings....129
Setting the Parking Heater Timer....129
Switching Continue Heat On....129
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting....132
Parking Heater – Information Messages....132
Passive Anti-Theft System....73
How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System Work....73
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System....73
Performing a System Reset....465
Personalized Settings....115
Phone Menu....453
Phone....453
Phone Precautions....453
Pickup Bed Access Caps....317
Locating the Pickup Bed Access Caps....317
What are Pickup Bed Access Caps....317
Pickup Bed Anchor Points....315
Locating the Pickup Bed Anchor Points....315

Pickup Bed Anchor Point Load Capacities....316
Pickup Bed Anchor Point Precautions....315
Pickup Bed....315
Pickup Bed Access Caps....317
Pickup Bed Anchor Points....315
Pickup Bed Slots....317
Roller Shutter....317
Pickup Bed Precautions....315
Pickup Bed Slots....317
Locating the Pickup Bed Slots....317
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®....457
Playing Media Using the USB Port....147
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source....443
Post-Crash Alert System....337
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work....337
Post-Crash Alert System Limitations....337
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off....337
What Is the Post-Crash Alert System....337
Post Impact Braking....337
How Does Post Impact Braking Work....337
Overriding Post Impact Braking....337
Post Impact Braking Indicators....337
Post Impact Braking Limitations....337
Power Outlet Indicators....149
Power Outlet Limitations....149
Power Outlet....149
Power Outlet Precautions....149
Power Seats....137
Adjusting the Head Restraint....138
Adjusting the Lumbar Support....139
Adjusting the Seat Backrest....138
Adjusting the Seat Cushion....138
Adjusting the Seat Height....139
Head Restraint Components....137
Installing the Head Restraint....138
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....138
Removing the Head Restraint....138
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations....298
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions....297
Pre-Collision Assist....297
Automatic Emergency Braking....302
Distance Alert....301
Distance Indication....300
Evasive Steering Assist....302
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting....303
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting....303
Pre-Collision Assist – Frequently Asked Questions....304
Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages....303
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps....303
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage....392
Programming a MyKey....61
Programming the Remote Control - Vehicles With: Flip Key....58
Programming the Remote Control - Vehicles With: Push Button Start....57
Puncture
See: Changing a Flat Tire....404
Push Button Ignition Switch....158

R

Radio Frequency Certification Labels....473
Audio Unit....473
Blind Spot Information System Sensors....474
Body Control Module....478
Cruise Control Module....480
Keys and Remote Controls....485
Passive Anti-Theft System....488
Radio Transceiver Module....491
SYNC....494
Telematics Control Unit....499
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Sensors....501
Wireless Accessory Charging Module....505
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification....432
Rear Exterior....31
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings....145
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators....145

Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations....144
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions....144
Rear Occupant Alert System....144
Rear Parking Aid....238
Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors....238
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings....238
Rear Parking Aid Limitations....238
What is the Rear Parking Aid....238
Rear Seats....141
Manual Seats....141
Rear View Camera Guide Lines....243
Rear View Camera Precautions....242
Rear View Camera....242
Rear View Camera Settings....243
Rear View Camera Settings....243
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and Off....244
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and Out....243
Rebooting the Center Display....450
Recalling a Preset Position....146
Recovery Towing....338
Accessing the Front Towing Point....338
Refueling....173
Manually Opening the Fuel Filler Door....176
Refueling System Overview....173
Refueling Your Vehicle....173
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge....216
Releasing the Parking Brake....213
Remote Control Limitations....52
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle....117
Remote Start Limitations....117
Remote Start Precautions....117
Remote Start....117
Remote Start Settings....118
Removing the Key Blade....53
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage....393
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....391
Replacement Parts Recommendation....511
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....57
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter....133
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades....80
Resetting the Individual Trip Values....116
Resetting the Trip Computer....116
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System....401
Restarting the Engine - Automatic Transmission....167
Restarting the Engine - Manual Transmission....167
Resuming the Set Speed Limit....273
Resuming the Set Speed....255
Reverse Braking Assist Indicators....220
Reverse Braking Assist Precautions....219
Reverse Braking Assist....219
Reverse Braking Assist – Troubleshooting....221
Reverse Braking Assist – Troubleshooting....221
Reverse Braking Assist – Frequently Asked Questions....222
Reverse Braking Assist – Information Messages....221
Roller Shutter....317
Opening and Closing the Roller Shutter....318
Overriding Roller Shutter Bounce-Back....319
Resetting Roller Shutter Bounce-Back....320
Roller Shutter Limitations....318
Roller Shutter Precautions....317
Stopping the Roller Shutter....319
What Is Roller Shutter Bounce-Back....319
Rollover Warning....472
Roof Rack....311
Removing and Installing the Roof Rack....312
Roof Rack Load Capacities....314
Roof Rack Precautions....311
Route Guidance....461
Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume....461
Canceling Route Guidance....462

Repeating an Instruction....461
Running Out of Fuel....171
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container....171
Filling a Portable Fuel Container....171

S

Saving a Preset Position....146
Scheduled Maintenance....470
Seatbelt Precautions....40
Seatbelt Reminder....41
Checking Seatbelt Status....41
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings....41
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators....41
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off....41
Seatbelts....40
Seatbelt Reminder....41
Security....73
Anti-Theft Alarm System....73
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings....74
Passive Anti-Theft System....73
Security – Troubleshooting....75
Security – Troubleshooting....75
Security – Frequently Asked Questions....76
Security – Information Messages....75
Selecting a Drive Mode....270
Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode - 4x4 with Part Time Engagement....199
Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode - Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode....201
Selecting the Audio Source....443
Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption....187
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines....183
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions....183
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements....183
Selective Catalytic Reduction System....183
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank....184
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting....187
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting....187
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Information Messages....187
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Warning Lamps....187
Sending and Receiving a Text Message....455
Service Data....22
Setting a Destination....460
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest....461
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination....461
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination....461
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination....461
Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen....461
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen....460
Setting a Memory Preset....444
Settings Data....23
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap....260
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed....259
Setting the Blower Motor Speed....120
Setting the Clock and Date....444
Setting the Cruise Control Speed....254
Setting the Hill Descent Speed....232
Setting the Speed Limit....273
Setting the Temperature....120
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance....308
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning....308
Setting the Wake Word....451
Shifting Into Reverse....190
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear....193
Side Parking Aid....239
Locating the Side Parking Aid Sensors....240
Side Parking Aid Audible Warnings....240
Side Parking Aid Limitations....239
What is the Side Parking Aid....239
Sitting in the Correct Position....134

Ranger (TRB) Vehicles Built From: 03-10-2022, enGBR, Edition date: 202206, DOM

Software Update Indicators....464
Software Update Settings....463
Software Update
See: Software Update Settings....463
See: Vehicle Software Updates....463
Sounding the Panic Alarm....53
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control....254
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings....274
Speed Limiter Indicators....273
Speed Limiter Precautions....273
Speed Limiter....273
Speedometer....102
Stability Control Indicator....230
Stability Control....228
Stability Control – Troubleshooting....231
Stability Control – Troubleshooting....231
Stability Control – Information Messages....231
Starter Switch
See: Ignition Switch....157
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions....157
Starting and Stopping the Engine....157
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry/Push Button Start....161
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting....162
Starting the Engine....158
Stopping the Engine....159
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting....162
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions....164
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages....163
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps....162
Starting the Engine....158
Restarting the Engine After Stopping it....159
Starting a Diesel Engine....158
Status Bar....448
Steering....234
Electric Power Steering....234
Steering – Troubleshooting....234
Steering – Troubleshooting....234
Steering – Frequently Asked Questions....236
Steering – Information Messages....235
Steering – Warning Indicators....234
Steering Wheel....25
Stopping the Engine - Automatic Transmission....167
Stopping the Engine - Manual Transmission....166
Stopping the Engine....159
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving....160
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary....159
Storage....154
Center Console....155
Cup Holders....154
Glasses Holder....155
Glove Compartment....154
Under Seat Storage....155
Storing a Fire Extinguisher....343
Storing a First Aid Kit....343
Storing a Warning Triangle....343
Storing Your Vehicle....392
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist....248
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist....249
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off....259
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off....119
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off....94
Switching Android Auto On and Off....459
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off....459
Switching Auto Hold On and Off....224
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off....166
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off....290
Switching Climate Control On and Off....119

Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off....295
Switching Cruise Control On and Off....254
Switching Driver Alert On and Off....306
Switching Four-Wheel Drive On and Off....199
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control....263
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter....276
Switching Hill Descent Control On and Off....232
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off....223
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off....119
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off....119
Switching Parking Aid On and Off....237
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off....299
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off....144
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off....119
Switching Repeat Mode On and Off....443
Switching Reverse Braking Assist On and Off....220
Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off....443
Switching Stability Control On and Off....229
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off....456
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off....443
Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off....128
Switching the Electronic Locking Differential On and Off....205
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off....94
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off....335
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off....120
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off....120
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off....78
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off....120
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off....275
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode....279
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off....279
Switching the Parking Heater On and Off With the Remote Control....130
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off....94
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off....273
Switching Traction Control On and Off....226
Switching Trailer Sway Control On and Off....328
Symbols Glossary....18
Symbols Used on Your Vehicle....18
System Update
See: Software Update Settings....463
See: Vehicle Software Updates....463

T

Tachometer....102
Tailgate Precautions....71
Tailgate....71
Opening the Tailgate....71
Tailgate Work Surface....71
Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications....415
Temporary Neutral Mode - Vehicles With: Electronic Shift....194
Entering Temporary Neutral Mode....194
Exiting Temporary Neutral Mode....195
Temporary Neutral Mode Limitations....194
What Is Temporary Neutral Mode....194
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment....472
Tire Care....396
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations....401

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions....401
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....401
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting....402
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting....402
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages....403
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps....402
Tire Pressure Specifications....396
Tire Rotation....400
Tow Ball....321
Attaching the Tow Ball Arm....321
Tow Ball Precautions....321
Towing a Trailer Limitations....326
Towing a Trailer Precautions....325
Towing a Trailer....325
Towing a Trailer – Troubleshooting....327
Towing Weights and Dimensions....326
Towing a Trailer – Troubleshooting....327
Towing a Trailer – Information Messages....327
Towing Weights and Dimensions....326
Towing Weight Capacities....326
Towing Your Vehicle....342
Traction Control Indicator....226
Traction Control....226
Traction Control – Troubleshooting....227
Traction Control – Troubleshooting....227
Traction Control – Information Messages....227
Traction Control – Warning Lamps....227
Traffic Announcements....446
Switching Traffic Announcements On and Off....446
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators....308
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations....307
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions....307
Traffic Sign Recognition....307
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting....308
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting....308
Traffic Sign Recognition – Frequently Asked Questions....308
Traffic Sign Recognition – Information Messages....308
Trailer Brake Precautions....325
Trailer Lighting Check....323
Trailer Sway Control Precautions....328
Trailer Sway Control....328
Trailer Towing Navigation....462
Transfer Case Fluid Capacity and Specification....202
Transmission Fluid Temperature Gauge - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen....104
Transmission Fluid Temperature Gauge - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen....103
Transporting the Vehicle....340
Trip Computer....116
Tyre Pressure Specifications
See: Tire Pressure Specifications....396

U

Under Hood Fuse Box....344
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box....344
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box....345
Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box....344
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Diesel....362
Under Hood Overview - 3.0L Diesel....363
Under Seat Storage....155
Locating the Under Seat Storage Compartment....155
USB Ports....147
Using Auto Hold....224
Using Keyless Entry....69
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems....62
Using Progressive Range Selection....195
Using Snow Chains....394
Using Summer Tires....394
Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen/12 Inch Screen....109
Using the Remote Control....52

Using This Publication....17

V

Vehicle Care....387
Cleaning the Exterior....387
Cleaning the Interior....389
Vehicle Dimensions - Chassis Cab....417
Vehicle Dimensions - Double Cab....418
Vehicle Dimensions - Single Cab....419
Vehicle Dimensions - SuperCab....421
Vehicle Identification Number....434
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number....434
Vehicle Identification Plate....437
Vehicle Identification Plate Overview....437
Vehicle Identification....434
Vehicle Identification Number....434
Vehicle Identification Plate....437
Vehicle Inspection Guide....359
Vehicle Interior - LHD....28
Vehicle Interior - RHD....29
Vehicle Software Updates....463
Vehicle System Reset....465
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting....442
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Frequently Asked Questions....442
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot....441
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting....442
Ventilated Seats....140
Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off....140
Ventilated Seat Precautions....140
Ventilation
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control....119
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control....124
Viewing the Tire Pressures....401
Visual Search....25
Voice Interaction Examples....451
Voice Interaction....451

W

Washer Fluid Specification....428
Washers....81
Adding Washer Fluid....82
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off....81
Using the Windshield Washer....81
Washer Fluid Specification....82
Washer Precautions....81
Washers
See: Wipers and Washers....79
Waxing Your Vehicle....391
Waypoints....461
Adding a Waypoint....461
Editing Waypoints....461
What Are the Auxiliary Switches....467
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators....106
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps....104
What Is a Connected Vehicle....438
What Is Active Park Assist....248
What Is Auto-Start-Stop....166
What Is Blind Spot Information System....289
What Is Cross Traffic Alert....294
What Is Cruise Control....254
What Is Drive Mode Control....270
What Is Driver Alert....305
What Is eCall....49
What Is Hill Descent Control....232
What Is Hill Start Assist....223
What Is Keyless Entry....69
What Is MyKey....60
What Is Pre-Collision Assist....297
What Is Remote Start....117
What Is Reverse Braking Assist....219
What Is the 360 Degree Camera....245
What Is the Auxiliary Heater....128
What Is the Cabin Air Filter....133
What Is the Catalytic Converter....189
What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter....178
What Is the Electric Parking Brake....215
What Is the Electronic Locking Differential....205
What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter....275
What Is the Lane Keeping System....278
What Is the Memory Function....146

What Is the Parking Heater.....129
What Is the Power Outlet.....149
What is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....144
What Is the Rear View Camera.....242
What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System.....183
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....401
What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger.....152
What Is Traction Control.....226
What Is Traffic Sign Recognition.....307
What is Voice Interaction.....451
Wheel and Tire Information.....394
Wheel Nuts.....414
Wi Fi
See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....441
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....438
See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....441
See: Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....441
Window Bounce-Back.....97
Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....97
What Is Window Bounce-Back.....97
Windows.....96
Global Opening and Closing.....96
Window Bounce-Back.....97
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....82
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions.....82
Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps.....82
Wipers and Washers.....79
Autowipers.....79
Washers.....81
Wipers.....79
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....82
Wipers.....79
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....79
Wiper Precautions.....79
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions.....152
Wireless Accessory Charger – Troubleshooting.....153
Wireless Accessory Charger – Information Messages.....153
Wireless Accessory Charger.....152
Wireless Accessory Charger – Troubleshooting.....153